BTEC HIGHER NATIONALS

Performing Arts

Specification
First Teaching from September 2019
First Certification from September 2020

Higher National Certificate Lvl 4
Higher National Diploma Lvl 5
Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications are awarded by Pearson, the UK's largest awarding body offering academic and vocational qualifications that are globally recognised and benchmarked. For further information, please visit our qualifications website at qualifications.pearson.com. Alternatively, you can get in touch with us using the details on our contact us page at qualifications.pearson.com/contactus

About Pearson

Pearson is the world's leading learning company, with 35,000 employees in more than 70 countries working to help people of all ages to make measurable progress in their lives through learning. We put the learner at the centre of everything we do, because wherever learning flourishes, so do people. Find out more about how we can help you and your learners at qualifications.pearson.com

References to third party material made in this specification are made in good faith. Pearson does not endorse, approve or accept responsibility for the content of materials, which may be subject to change, or any opinions expressed therein. (Material may include textbooks, journals, magazines and other publications and websites.)

All information in this specification is correct at time of publication.

ISBN 978 1 446 95874 2

All the material in this publication is copyright

© Pearson Education Limited 2020

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts – © lapandr/Shutterstock
# Summary of changes in Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts Issue 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of changes made between previous issue and this current issue</th>
<th>Page number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Branding**  
  Added new front cover  
  Applied updated Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals branding colour, font and tables throughout the spec | 1-618 |
| **2.7 How Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills**  
  Correction. Changed word from moderated to verified | 12 |
| **3.2.1 English language requirements for Higher Nationals**  
  Updated section on English language requirements for Higher Nationals to clarify guidance | 15 |
| **4.2.3 Meeting local needs (MLN)**  
**4.2.4 Pearson BTEC Higher National Commissioned Development**  
Updated section and guidance | 56-57 |
| **6.3.2 Making assessment decisions using criteria**  
Correction. Changed word from moderated to ‘verified’  
Correction. Changed word from mark to ‘grade’  
Correction. Changed word from marks to ‘grades’ | 81 |
| **Corrections**  
Corrections of typos and spelling and grammatical, and errors across the spec | 149, 174, 179, 187, 193, 210, 227, 244, 255, 466, 480, 506, 513, 520, |
| **Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry.**  
Change of wording for M2 assessment criteria ‘in the film industry and onstage’ to ‘in the film/TV industry and theatre/live performance industry’ | 96-103 |
| **Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1.**  
Additional essential content added ‘Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.’ | 110-116 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 4: Ballet 1.</th>
<th>117-123</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content added ‘Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Additional essential content added: ‘Health and wellbeing within the ballet industry. Mental health, resilience, stamina and a healthy mind and body.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1.</th>
<th>131-136</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content added ‘Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rewording of assessment criteria for P1 to ‘demonstrate all required work within a class environment with assurance’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rewording of assessment criteria for M1 to ‘demonstrate all required work within a class environment with assurance’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 7: Tap 1</th>
<th>137-143</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content added ‘Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of one word assessment criteria for P1 ‘environment’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of one word assessment criteria for M1 ‘environment’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 8: American Tap.</th>
<th>144-151</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content added ‘Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of one word assessment criteria for P1 ‘environment’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of one word assessment criteria for M1 ‘environment’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 9: Choreography 1</th>
<th>152-157</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Additional essential content added ‘Exploration of skills required to effectively choreograph: originality, concepts and idea creation, leadership, communication. ‘Diversity of choreographers’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 ‘The business of choreography – copyright and ownership or moves and works’.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism</th>
<th>158-163</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Additional essential content added ‘Current trends and advances’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Current trends, movements, technological advances and potential impact on employment in specialist area ‘Consideration of a resurgence of skills eg. traditional wig making, analogue productions’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing ‘performing’ with ‘creative’ of assessment criteria for M1, D1, P3, M2, M3 and P5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11: Dance for Camera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Additional essential content added ‘games’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164-169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 13: Acting 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Additional essential content ‘Health and wellbeing while developing a role’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177-184</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 21: Production Communication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Additional essential content added ‘health and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232-238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 22: Stagecraft</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 and LO4 Additional essential content ‘health and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content ‘Health and wellbeing: stress management, anxiety and pressure etc.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239-244</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 24: Sound Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Additional essential content added ‘health, safety and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254-261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 25: Special FX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit introduction: Replaced ‘Theatre World’ with Creative Industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262-267</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 29: Crewing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Additional essential content added ‘health, safety and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287-294</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 46: Auditioning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit introduction: Replaced ‘Performing’ with ‘Creative’ and additional text ‘In light of the #metoo movement there has been many discussions about casting and the audition process relating to professional standards and what is required. While exploring audition skills through this unit, students will also discuss current policies and guidance on casting and audition requirement’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updated essential content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422-428</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 47: Choreography 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Updated essential content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>429-435</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 55: Management Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional essential content added ‘health, safety and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>492-498</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 59: Stage Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional essential content added ‘health, safety and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524-532</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 60: Costume Design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit renamed from ‘The Costume Design’ to ‘Costume Design’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>533-539</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit 62: Mask and Puppet Making</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Updated introduction to check plural agreement as section refers to two production forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>548-555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 64: Directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional essential content added ‘health, safety and wellbeing’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix 6: Recognition of Prior Learning</th>
<th>614-618</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Added RPL Mapping from L4 QCF to L4 RQF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you need further information on these changes or what they mean, contact us via our website at: qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html.
# Contents

1 **Introduction**  
1.1 The Student Voice  
1.2 Why choose Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals?  
1.3 HN Global  
1.4 Qualification Titles  
1.5 Qualification codes  
1.6 Awarding institution  
1.7 Key features  
1.8 Collaborative development  

2 **Programming purpose and objectives**  
2.1 Purpose of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts  
2.2 Objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts  
2.3 Aims of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts  
2.4 Aims of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts  
2.5 What could these qualifications lead to?  
   2.5.1 Progression to university  
   2.5.2 Employment  
2.6 Use of Maths and English within the curriculum  
2.7 How Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills  

3 **Planning your programme**  
3.1 Delivering the Higher Nationals in Performing Arts  
3.2 Entry requirements and admissions  
   3.2.1 English language requirements for Higher Nationals  
   3.2.2 Centre approval  
   3.2.3 Level of sector knowledge required  
   3.2.4 Resources required  
   3.2.5 HN Global support  
   3.2.6 Modes of delivery  
   3.2.7 Recommendations for employer engagement  
   3.2.8 Support from Pearson  
   3.2.9 Student employability
3.3 Access to study 18
3.4 Student registration and entry 18
3.5 Access to assessments 19
3.6 Administrative arrangements for internal assessment 19
   3.6.1 Records 19
   3.6.2 Reasonable adjustments to assessment 19
   3.6.3 Special consideration 20
   3.6.4 Appeals against assessment 20
3.7 Dealing with malpractice in assessment 20
   3.7.1 Internally assessed units 21
   3.7.2 Student malpractice 21
   3.7.3 Staff and centre malpractice 22
   3.7.4 Sanctions and appeals 22

4 Programme structure 24
4.1 Units, Credits, Total Qualification Time (TQT) and Guided Learning (GL) 24
4.2 Programme structures 25
   4.2.1 Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts 26
   4.2.2 Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts 39
   4.2.3 Meeting local needs (MLN) 56
   4.2.4 Pearson BTEC Higher National Commissioned Development 57
4.3 Pearson-set Assignments 57
4.4 The unit descriptor 58

5 Teaching and learning 61
5.1 Delivering quality and depth 61
5.2 Engaging with employers 63
5.3 Engaging with students 63
5.4 Planning and structuring a programme 64
   5.4.1 Sequencing units 65
   5.4.2 Condensed and expanded delivery 66
   5.4.3 Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques 68
   5.4.4 Assessment considerations 71
   5.4.5 Formative assessment 71
   5.4.6 Summative assessment 71
   5.4.7 Assessment feedback 72
   5.4.8 Designing valid and reliable assessments 72
6 Assessment

6.1 Principles of internal assessment

6.1.1 Assessment through assignments

6.1.2 Assessment decisions through applying unit-based criteria

6.1.3 The assessment team

6.1.4 Effective organisation

6.1.5 Student preparation

6.2 Setting effective assessments

6.2.1 Setting the number and structure of assignments

6.2.2 Providing an assignment brief

6.2.3 Forms of evidence

6.3 Making valid assessment decisions

6.3.1 Authenticity of student work

6.3.2 Making assessment decisions using criteria

6.3.3 Dealing with late completion of assignments

6.3.4 Issuing assessment decisions and feedback

6.3.5 Resubmission opportunity

6.3.6 Repeat Units

6.3.7 Assessment Boards

6.4 Planning and record keeping

6.5 Calculation of the final qualification grade

6.5.1 Conditions for the award

6.5.2 Compensation provisions

6.5.3 Calculation of the overall qualification grade

6.5.4 Modelled student outcomes

7 Quality assurance

7.1 The approval process

7.2 Monitoring of internal centre systems

7.3 Independent assessment review

7.4 Annual Programme Monitoring Report (APMR)

7.5 Annual student survey

7.6 Centre and qualification approval

7.7 Continuing quality assurance and standards verification

8 Recognition of Prior Learning and attainment

9 Equality and diversity
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10</th>
<th>Higher Nationals Performing Arts Units</th>
<th>95</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2: Professional Development</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4: Ballet 1</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 7: Tap 1</td>
<td>137</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 8: American Tap</td>
<td>144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 9: Choreography 1</td>
<td>152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11: Dance for Camera</td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 12: Singing 1</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 13: Acting 1</td>
<td>177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 14: Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 15: Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 16: Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 17: Acting for Camera</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>212</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 19: Movement for Actors</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 21: Production Communication</td>
<td>232</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 22: Stagecraft</td>
<td>239</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 23: Lighting Operation</td>
<td>245</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 24: Sound Operation</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 25: Special FX</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 26: Scenic Construction</td>
<td>268</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 27: Costume Construction</td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 28: Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 29: Crewing</td>
<td>287</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 30: Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>295</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 31: Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>306</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 32: Creative Research Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>317</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry</td>
<td>322</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 34: Jazz Dance 2 331
Unit 35: Ballet 2 338
Unit 36: Contemporary Dance 2 347
Unit 37: Commercial Dance 2 357
Unit 38: Tap 2 363
Unit 39: Dance for Musical Theatre 370
Unit 40: Partner Work 377
Unit 41: Contact Improvisation 383
Unit 42: Physical Theatre 390
Unit 43: Singing 2 397
Unit 44: Acting 2 404
Unit 45: Immersive Theatre 412
Unit 46: Auditioning 422
Unit 47: Choreography 2 429
Unit 48: Classical Acting 436
Unit 49: Producing Theatre 445
Unit 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2 452
Unit 51: Dance for Actors 461
Unit 52: Performance Project 470
Unit 53: Mask Acting 478
Unit 54: Production Design 486
Unit 55: Management Role 492
Unit 56: Sound Design 499
Unit 57: Lighting Design 507
Unit 58: Set Design 518
Unit 59: Stage Management 524
Unit 60: Costume Design 533
Unit 61: Hair and Make-up Design 540
Unit 62: Mask and Puppet Making 548
Unit 63: Working in Creative Education 556
Unit 64: Directing 563
Unit 65: The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist 571
Unit 66: Special FX 2 582

11 Appendices 592
Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Performing Arts against FHEQ Level 5 593
Appendix 2: HNC/HND Performing Arts Programme Outcomes for Students 597
Appendix 3: Glossary of terms used for internally assessed units 601
Appendix 4: Assessment methods and techniques for Higher Nationals 605
Appendix 5: Transferable skills mapping 610
   Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills 610
   Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills 612
Appendix 6: Recognition of Prior Learning 614
   HNCs in Performing Arts: Unit Mapping Overview 614
   HNCs in Performing Arts: Unit Mapping Depth 616
1 Introduction

BTEC is one of the world’s most recognised applied learning brands, engaging students in practical, interpersonal and thinking skills, for more than thirty years. BTECs are work-related qualifications for students taking their first steps into employment, or for those already in employment and seeking career development opportunities. BTECs provide progression into the workplace either directly or via study at university and are also designed to meet employers’ needs. Therefore, Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are widely recognised by industry and higher education as the principal vocational qualification at Levels 4 and 5.

When developing the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Performing Arts, we collaborated with a wide range of students, employers, higher education providers, colleges and subject experts to ensure that the new qualifications meet their needs and expectations. We also worked closely with the relevant Professional Bodies, to ensure alignment with recognised professional standards.

There is now a greater emphasis on employer engagement and work readiness. The new BTEC Higher National qualifications in Performing Arts are designed to reflect this increasing need for high-quality professional and technical education pathways at Levels 4 and 5, thereby providing students with a clear line of sight to employment and to progression to a degree at Level 6.

1.1 The Student Voice

Students are at the heart of what we do. That is why, from the outset, we consulted with students in the development of these qualifications. We involved them in writing groups, sought their feedback, and added their voices and views to those of other stakeholders.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

1.2 Why choose Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals?

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are designed to help students secure the knowledge skills and behaviours needed to succeed in the workplace. They represent the latest in professional standards and provide opportunities for students to develop behaviours for work, for example by undertaking a group project, or responding to a client brief. A student may even achieve exemption from professional or vendor qualifications, or student membership of selected professional bodies, to help them on their journey to professional competence.
At the same time, the BTEC Higher Nationals are intended to keep doors open for future study should a student wish to progress further in their education after their Level 5 study. They do this by allowing space for the development of higher education study skills, such as the ability to research. Clear alignment of level of demand with the Framework for Higher Education qualification descriptors at Levels 4 and 5 means that students wishing to progress to Level 6 study should feel better prepared. The Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals address these various requirements by providing:

- A range of Core, Optional and Specialist units, each with a clear purpose, so there is something to suit each student's choice of programme and future progression plans
- Fully revised content that is closely aligned with the needs of employers, professional bodies, vendors and higher education for a skilled future workforce
- The opportunity to develop transferable skills useful for work and for higher education, including research skills, the ability to meet deadlines and communication skills
- Learning Outcomes mapped against Professional Body standards and vendor accreditation requirements, where appropriate
- Assessments and projects chosen to help students progress to the next stage (this means some are set by the Centre to meet local needs, while others are set by Pearson). Students are required to apply their knowledge to a variety of assignments and activities, with a focus on the holistic development of practical, interpersonal and higher-level thinking skills
- An approach to demand at Levels 4 and 5 which is aligned with the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ)
- Support for student and tutors, including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs.

1.3 **HN Global**

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are supported by a specially designed range of digital resources, to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course.

With HN Global, tutors can access programme specifications which contain useful information on programme planning and quality assurance processes. Tutors can also view Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, helping them create meaningful courses and assessments. HN Global also allows tutors to create and annotate reading lists for their students and also keep up-to-date on the latest news regarding HN programmes.
1.4 Qualification Titles

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts
Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Acting)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Musical Theatre)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Dance)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Technical Arts)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (General).

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts
Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts (Acting)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts (Musical Theatre)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts (Dance)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts (Technical Arts).

1.5 Qualification codes
Ofqual Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF) Qualification numbers:
Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts: 603/2377/2
Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts: 603/2375/9

1.6 Awarding institution
Pearson Education Ltd.
1.7 **Key features**

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Performing Arts offer:

- A stimulating and challenging programme of study that will be both engaging and memorable for students
- The essential subject knowledge that students need to progress successfully into further study or the world of work
- A simplified structure: students undertake a substantial core of learning in the Higher National Certificate and can build on this in the Higher National Diploma, with Optional units linked to their specialist area of study
- Four Specialist pathways in the Level 4 Certificate and Level 5 Diploma, so there is something to suit each student’s preference of study and future progression plans
- Refreshed content that is closely aligned with Professional Body, employer and higher education needs
- Assessments that consider cognitive skills (what students know) along with affective and applied skills (respectively how they behave and what they can do)
- Unit-specific grading and Pearson-set assignments
- A varied approach to assessment that supports progression to Level 6 and also allows Centres to offer assessment relevant to the local economy, thereby accommodating and enhancing different learning styles
- Quality Assurance measures – as outlined in sections 6 and 7 of this Programme Specification – to ensure that all stakeholders (e.g. Professional bodies, vendors, if appropriate, and universities, colleges and students) can feel confident in the integrity and value of the qualifications
- A qualification designed to meet the needs and expectations of students aspiring to work in an international Performing Arts environment.

**Qualification frameworks**

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are designated higher education qualifications in the UK. They are aligned to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ) in England, Wales and Northern Ireland, and Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Subject Benchmark Statements. These qualifications are part of the UK Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF).

1.8 **Collaborative development**

Students completing their BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts will be aiming to go on to employment or progress to a final year at university. Therefore, it was essential that we developed these qualifications in close collaboration with experts from professional bodies and universities, and with the providers who will be delivering the qualifications.
We are very grateful to the university and further education tutors, employers, Professional Body representatives and other individuals who have generously shared their time and expertise to help us develop these new qualifications.

- Drama UK
- Dance UK
- Equity
- PLASA
- Royal Shakespeare Company (RSC)
- BBC
- Really Useful Group
- Michelle Blair Management
- Belfield & Ward
- Centre Parcs
- Nicholas Pinnock
- Arthur Pita
- Will Kemp
- Stephen Mear
- Bill Deamer
- Alistair David
- Amber Topaz
- Sue Quinn
- Simon Meacock
- Helen Goldwyn
- Institute of Contemporary Music Practice (ICMP)
- London Academy of Music and Dramatic Art (LAMDA)
- Tring
- University of East London
- Ravensbourne
- Legat School of Ballet and Contemporary Dance
- Kingston College
- Colchester Institute
- Bradford College
- Stratford Upon Avon College
• Knowsley Community College
• Lancaster And Morecambe College
• North Kent College
• Belfast Metropolitan College
• West Nottinghamshire College
• Hertford Regional College
• Gateshead College
2 Programming purpose and objectives

2.1 Purpose of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts

The purpose of BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts is to develop students as professional, self-reflecting individuals able to meet the demands of employers in the Performing Arts and adapt to a constantly changing world. The qualifications aim to widen access to higher education and enhance the career prospects of those who undertake them.

2.2 Objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts

The objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts are as follows:

- To equip students with Performing Arts skills, knowledge and the understanding necessary to achieve high performance in the global Performing Arts environment
- To provide education and training for a range of careers in Performing Arts, including areas/titles
- To provide insight and understanding into the diversity of roles within the Performing Arts, recognising the importance of collaboration at all levels
- To equip students with knowledge and understanding of culturally diverse organisations, cross-cultural issues, diversity and values
- To provide opportunities for students to enter or progress in employment in Performing Arts, or progress to higher education qualifications such as an Honours degree in Performing Arts or a related area
- To provide opportunities for students to develop the skills, techniques and personal attributes essential for successful working lives
- To support students to understand the local, regional and global context of performing arts and, for those students with a global outlook, to aspire to international career pathways
- To provide students with opportunities to address contemporary issues facing the industry, and society at large; recognising the role that performing arts plays in addressing these issues
- To provide opportunities for students to achieve a nationally-recognised professional qualification within their chosen area of specialisation
- To provide opportunities for students to achieve vendor accredited certifications
● To offer students the chance of career progression in their chosen field, with particular emphasis on achieving management-level positions, professional recognition and beyond

● To allow flexibility of study and to meet local or specialist needs

● To offer a balance between employability skills and the knowledge essential for students with entrepreneurial, employment or academic aspirations

● To provide students with opportunities to engage in an industry-recognised apprenticeship scheme that aligns with their employer’s needs and their own career aspirations

● To provide students with the context in which to consider professional ethics and their relation to personal, professional and statutory responsibilities within the industry.

We meet these objectives by:

● Providing a Level 4 that leads the student to a range of specialist progression pathways at Level 4 and Level 5 which relate to individual professions within the Performing Arts

● Equipping individuals with commercial acumen, understanding and Performing Arts skills for success in a range of the roles in Performing Arts, and a General pathway at Level 4 for those who have not yet decided on their specialism

● Enabling progression to a university degree by supporting the development of appropriate academic study skills.

Enabling progression to further professional qualifications in specific Performing Arts areas by mapping to units in a range of professional Performing Arts qualifications.

Who is this qualification for?

The BTEC Higher National qualifications in Performing Arts are aimed at students wanting to continue their education through applied learning. Higher Nationals provide a wide-ranging study of the Performing Arts and are designed for students who wish to pursue or advance their career in Performing Arts. In addition to the knowledge, understanding and skills that underpin the study of the Performing Arts, Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts give students experience of the breadth and depth of the Performing Arts that will prepare them for further study or training.
2.3 Aims of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts offers students a broad introduction to the subject area via a mandatory core of learning, while allowing for the acquisition of skills and experience through the selection of Optional units across a range of occupational sectors at Level 4 through a ‘General Performing Arts’ pathway. This effectively builds underpinning core skills while preparing the student for subject specialisation at Level 5. Students will gain a wide range of Performing Arts knowledge tied to practical skills gained in research, self-study, directed study and workplace scenarios.

At Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts also offers students four Specialist pathways designed to support students who wish to concentrate on a particular aspect of Performing Arts:

- Dance
- Acting
- Musical Theatre
- Technical Arts.

At Level 4 students develop a broad knowledge and awareness of key aspects of the Performing Arts through two Core units, which include one unit assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The units are:

- The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set unit)
- Professional Development.

Graduates successfully completing the Higher National Certificate will be able to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the basic concepts of Performing Arts. They will be able to communicate accurately and appropriately and they will have the qualities needed for employment that require some degree of personal responsibility. They will have developed a range of transferable skills to ensure effective team working, independent initiatives, organisational competence and problem-solving strategies. They will be adaptable and flexible in their approach to Performing Arts, show resilience under pressure, and meet challenging targets within a given resource.
2.4 **Aims of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts**

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts offers students four Specialist pathways designed to support progression into relevant occupational areas or on to degree-level study.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma offers the following Specialist pathways for students who wish to concentrate on a particular aspect of Performing Arts:

- Dance
- Acting
- Musical Theatre
- Technical Arts.

Holders of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma will have developed a sound understanding of the principles in their field of study and will have learned to apply those principles more widely. They will have learned to evaluate the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems. They will be able to perform effectively in their chosen field and will have the qualities necessary for employment in situations requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making.

2.5 **What could these qualifications lead to?**

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate provides a solid grounding in Performing Arts, which students can build on should they decide to continue their studies beyond the Certificate stage. Students can choose to study on a Specialist pathway or on the General pathway if they are yet to decide on their specialist area of study, from which they can progress onto a Specialist pathway at Level 5.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma allows students to further specialise by committing to specific career paths and progression routes to degree-level study.

On successful completion of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma, students can develop their careers in the Performing Arts through:

- Entering employment
- Continuing existing employment
- Linking with the appropriate professional body
- Linking with the appropriate certificates
- Committing to continuing professional development (cpd)
- Progressing to university.
2.5.1 Progression to university

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma is recognised by Higher Education providers as meeting admission requirements to many relevant Performing Arts-related courses, for example:

- BSc Hons in Technical Arts
- BA Hons in Dance Studies
- BA Hons in Acting
- BA Hons in Musical Theatre.

Students should always check the entry requirements for degree programmes at specific Higher Education providers. After completing a BTEC Higher National Certificate or Diploma, students can also progress directly into employment.

University recognition and articulations

We work with a number of universities around the world to recognise and accept Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals as a qualification for entry onto an undergraduate degree. Many universities now allow advanced entry onto the second or third year of a degree. Some universities have direct articulations on to the second or third year of a bachelor’s degree programme with Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals. Students should be aware that university admission criteria is always subject to change and understand the course entry requirements for subject, year and grade before applying.

For more information on entry requirements, including 2+1 articulations, please visit: https://degreecoursefinder.pearson.com

2.5.2 Employment

The skills offered as part of the Pearson BTEC Higher National Diploma can provide graduates with the opportunity to work in many different areas of the Performing Arts. Below are some examples of job roles each qualification could lead to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Employment areas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dancer: jazz, ballet, commercial dance, tap, American tap, contemporary, physical theatre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choreographer, Assistant Choreographer, Dance Captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performer: vocalist, dancer and actor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actor: stage, camera, radio and multimedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costume design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.6 Use of Maths and English within the curriculum

Those working within the Performing Arts sector cannot just rely on their technical skills and must ensure they develop, for example they will be required to communicate appropriately with stakeholders throughout their career, so the ability to use maths and English in a professional context is an essential employability skill that must be developed at all levels of study.

Development of essential maths and English skills are embedded throughout these qualifications in accordance with industry requirements and below are some examples of how these skills are developed in the BTEC Higher National curriculum:

- Written reports
- Formal presentations
- Informal conversations
- Use of professional, Performing Arts-specific language.

2.7 How Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills

Students need both relevant qualifications and employability skills to enhance their career prospects and contribute to their personal development. Pearson Higher National Performing Arts qualifications embed throughout the programme the development of key skills, attributes and strengths required by 21st century employers.

Where employability skills are referred to in this specification, this generally refers to skills in five main categories:

- **Cognitive and problem-solving skills**: critical thinking, approaching non-routine problems by applying expert and creative solutions, use of systems and digital technology, generating and communicating ideas creatively.
- **Intra-personal skills**: self-management, adaptability and resilience, self-monitoring and self-development, self-analysis and reflection, planning and prioritising.
- **Interpersonal skills**: effective communication and articulation of information, working collaboratively, negotiating and influencing, self-presentation.

- **Commercial skills**: sector awareness; sales; marketing/promotion; budget management/monitoring;

- **Business skills**: awareness of types of companies, company formation, invoicing, calculating fees, business management.

Example Assessment Briefs make recommendations for a range of real or simulated assessment activities, for example, group work where appropriate, to encourage development of collaborative and interpersonal skills or a solution focused case study to provide the opportunity to develop cognitive skills. There are specific requirements for the assessment of these skills, as relevant, within the assessment grids for each unit. Example Assessment Briefs are for guidance and support only and must be customised and amended according to localised needs and requirements. All assignments must still be verified as per the internal verification process.

Students can also benefit from opportunities for deeper learning, where they are able to make connections between units and select areas of interest for detailed study. In this way BTEC Higher Nationals provide a vocational context in which students can develop the knowledge and academic study skills required for progression to university degree courses, including:

- Active research skills
- Effective writing skills
- Analytical skills
- Critical thinking
- Creative problem-solving
- Decision-making
- Team building
- Exam preparation skills
- Digital literacy
- Competence in assessment methods used in higher education.

To support you in developing these skills in your students, we have developed a map of Higher Education relevant transferable and academic study skills, available in appendices.
3 Planning your programme

3.1 Delivering the Higher Nationals in Performing Arts

You play a central role in helping your students to choose the right BTEC Higher National qualification.

You should assess your students very carefully to ensure that they take the right qualification and the right pathways or Optional units, to allow them to progress to the next stage. You should check the qualification structures and unit combinations carefully when advising students.

You will need to ensure that your students have access to a full range of information, advice and guidance in order to support them in making the necessary qualification and unit choices. When students are recruited, you need to give them accurate information on the title and focus of the qualification for which they are studying.

3.2 Entry requirements and admissions

Although Pearson do not specify formal entry requirements, as a centre it is your responsibility to ensure that the students you recruit have a reasonable expectation of success on the programme.

For students who have recently been in education, the entry profile is likely to include one of the following:

- A BTEC Level 3 qualification in Performing Arts
- A GCE Advanced Level profile that demonstrates strong performance in a relevant subject or adequate performance in more than one GCE subject. This profile is likely to be supported by GCSE grades at A* to C and/or 9 to 4 (or equivalent)
- Other related Level 3 qualifications
- An Access to Higher Education Diploma awarded by an approved further education institution
- Related work experience
- An international equivalent of the above.

Centres may wish to consider applicants’ prior learning when considering their acceptance on a BTEC Higher Nationals, through Recognition of Prior Learning. (For further information please refer to section 8 of this document.)
3.2.1 English language requirements for Higher Nationals

- Pearson’s mission is to help people make progress in their lives through learning. In order to do this it is critical that students who are taught and assessed in English have the necessary language skills they need to be successful on Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications.

- To assist centres to recruit students who have the skills to benefit from undertaking a Higher National programme of study, we are providing the following clarification regarding the English language admission requirements when offering places to applicants.

- **All centres** delivering Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in English must ensure that each applicant can demonstrate their capability to learn and be assessed at the relevant level in English. The standard that Pearson believes must be demonstrated for a student to be successful are equivalent to:
  
  - Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) level B2; or
  - Pearson Test of English Academic (PTE Academic) 42; or
  - Pearson Test of English General (PTE) Level 3; or
  - Pearson Versant English Test 58-68; or
  - International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 5.5; with both Reading and Writing elements at 5.5; or
  - Having recently completed a formal programme of study in English at an appropriate level (such as a level 3 BTEC or ‘A’ level) prior to starting their Higher National

The table below shows when Pearson expects these standards to apply:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Centre location</th>
<th>Language of delivery and/or assessment</th>
<th>When we expect the English language standards to apply</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UK or Internationally</td>
<td>Wholly delivered and assessed in English</td>
<td>Prior to admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK or Internationally</td>
<td>Partially delivered and assessed in English</td>
<td>Prior to admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK or Internationally</td>
<td>No element is delivered or assessed in English</td>
<td>Does not apply</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 We would usually expect this to be within the past two years
2 If a centre is delivering qualifications in languages other than English, they must adhere to Pearson’s Use of Language in Qualifications policy that can be found in the support section, under Policies for centres, learners and employees on our website http://qualifications.pearson.com
Centres’ admissions processes must ensure that students can demonstrate their capability in English, equivalent to the standards highlighted above. While we have highlighted several standardised tests (as an easy way of demonstrating this) centres are free to test the English proficiency of their applicants in any suitable way.

**However, centres must be able to provide evidence to Pearson as to how any other assessments used (other than those specified) ensures that their applicants have demonstrated appropriate English capability prior to starting their Higher National programme.**

This evidence should include admissions records (including any evidence provided by applicants and records of the admissions decisions made) as well as evidence of ongoing monitoring of students, if required. A centre should retain this evidence for at least three years, from the point of the student’s admission/enrolment, to enable scrutiny of the centre’s admissions process through Pearson’s quality assurance procedures.

### 3.2.2 Centre approval

To ensure that centres are ready to assess students and that we can provide the support that is needed all centres must be approved before they can offer these qualifications. For more information about becoming a centre and seeking approval to run our qualifications please visit the support section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

### 3.2.3 Level of sector knowledge required

We do not set any requirements for tutors, but we do recommend that centres assess the overall skills and knowledge of the teaching team, which should be relevant, up to date and at the appropriate level.

### 3.2.4 Resources required

As part of your centre approval, you will need to show that the necessary material resources and work spaces are available to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals. For some units, specific resources are required, this is clearly indicated in the unit descriptors.

### 3.2.5 HN Global support

HN Global is an online resource that supports centre planning and delivery of BTEC Higher Nationals by providing appropriate teaching and learning resources. For further information see sections 5 and 6 of this Programme Specification.
3.2.6 Modes of delivery
Subject to approval by Pearson, centres are free to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals using modes of delivery that meet the needs of their students. We recommend making use of a wide variety of modes, including:

- Full-time
- Part-time
- Blended learning.

3.2.7 Recommendations for employer engagement
BTEC Higher Nationals are vocational qualifications and as an approved centre you are encouraged to work with employers on the design, delivery and assessment of the course. This will ensure that students enjoy a programme of study that is engaging and relevant, and which equips them for progression. There are suggestions in section 5.2 about how employers could become involved in delivery and/or assessment, but these are not intended to be exhaustive and there will be other possibilities at a local level.

3.2.8 Support from Pearson
We provide a range of support materials, including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, with supporting templates. You will be allocated an External Examiner early in the planning stage, to support you with planning your assessments, and there will be training events and support from our Subject Leads.

3.2.9 Student employability
All BTEC Higher Nationals have been designed and developed with consideration of National Occupational Standards, where relevant.

Employability skills such as team working and entrepreneurialism as well as practical hands-on skills have been built into the design of the learning aims and content. This gives you the opportunity to use relevant contexts, scenarios and materials to enable students to develop a portfolio of evidence demonstrating the breadth of their skills and knowledge in a way that equips them for employment.
3.3 Access to study

This section focuses on the administrative requirements for delivering a BTEC Higher National qualification. It will be of value to Quality Nominees, Programme Leaders and Examinations Officers.

Our policy regarding access to our qualifications is that:

- They should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards.
- They should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression.

There should be equal opportunities for all those wishing to access the qualifications. We refer Centres to our Pearson Equality and Diversity Policy, which can be found in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National programmes with integrity. They will need to make sure that applicants have relevant information and advice about the qualification, to make sure it meets their needs. Centres should review the applicant's prior qualifications and/or experience to consider whether this profile shows that they have the potential to achieve the qualification. For students with disabilities and specific needs, this review will need to take account of the support available to the student during the teaching and assessment of the qualification. For further guidance and advice please refer to Section 9 on reasonable adjustments.

3.4 Student registration and entry

All students should be registered for the qualification, and appropriate arrangements made for internal and external verification. For information on making registrations for the qualification, you will need to refer to the information manual available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Students can be formally assessed only for a qualification on which they are registered. If students' intended qualifications change (for example, if a student decides to choose a different specialist pathway), then the centre must transfer the student to the chosen pathway appropriately. Please note that student work cannot be sampled if the student is not registered or is registered on an incorrect pathway.
3.5 Access to assessments

Assessments need to be administered carefully, to ensure that all students are treated fairly, and that results and certification are issued on time, allowing students to move on to chosen progression opportunities.

Our equality policy requires that all students should have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments, and that our qualifications are awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- Students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic.
- All students achieve the recognition they deserve for undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Further information on access arrangements can be found on the Joint Council for Qualifications website (http://www.jcq.org.uk/).

3.6 Administrative arrangements for internal assessment

3.6.1 Records

You are required to retain records of assessment for each student. Records should include assessments taken, decisions reached and any adjustments or appeals. Further information on quality and assessment can be found in our UK and international guides available in the support section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/). We may ask to audit your records, so they must be retained as specified. All student work must be retained for a minimum of 12 weeks after certification has taken place.

3.6.2 Reasonable adjustments to assessment

A reasonable adjustment is one that is made before a student takes an assessment, to ensure that he or she has fair access to demonstrate the requirements of the assessments.

You are able to make adjustments to internal assessments to take account of the needs of individual students. In most cases this can be achieved through a defined time extension or by adjusting the format of evidence. We can advise you if you are uncertain as to whether an adjustment is fair and reasonable. You need to plan for time to make adjustments, if necessary.

Further details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).
3.6.3 Special consideration

Special consideration is given after an assessment has taken place for students who have been affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, and require an adjustment of grade to reflect normal level of attainment. You must operate special consideration in line with Pearson policy (see previous paragraph). You can provide special consideration related to the period of time given for evidence to be provided, or for the format of the assessment (if it is equally valid). You may not substitute alternative forms of evidence to that required in a unit, or omit the application of any assessment criteria to judge attainment. Pearson can consider applications for special consideration in line with the policy, which can be found in the document linked above.

Please note that your centre must have a policy for dealing with mitigating circumstances if students are affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, which result in non-submission or late submission of assessment.

3.6.4 Appeals against assessment

Your centre must have a policy for dealing with appeals from students. These appeals may relate to assessment decisions being incorrect or assessment not being conducted fairly. The first step in such a policy could be a consideration of the evidence by a Programme Leader or other member of the programme team. The assessment plan should allow time for potential appeals after assessment decisions have been given to students. If there is an appeal by a student, you must document the appeal and its resolution. Students have a final right of appeal to Pearson, but only if the procedures that you have put in place have been followed.

Further details of our policy on enquiries and appeals is available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/+).

If your centre is located in England or Wales and the student is still dissatisfied with the final outcome of their appeal they can make a further appeal to the Office of the Independent Adjudicator (OIA) by emailing: enquiries@oiahe.org.uk. In Northern Ireland a further appeal may be lodged with the Northern Ireland Public Service Ombudsman (NIPSO) by emailing: nipso@nipso.org.uk.

3.7 Dealing with malpractice in assessment

‘Malpractice’ means acts that undermine the integrity and validity of assessment, the certification of qualifications and/or may damage the authority of those responsible for delivering the assessment and certification.

Pearson does not tolerate actual or attempted actions of malpractice by learners, centre staff or centres in connection with Pearson qualifications. Pearson may impose penalties and/or sanctions on learners, centre staff or centres where malpractice or attempted malpractice has been proven.
Malpractice may occur or be suspected in relation to any unit or type of assessment within a qualification. For further details on malpractice and advice on preventing malpractice by learners, please see Pearson's Centre Guidance: Dealing with Malpractice, available on our website.

The procedures we ask you to adopt vary between units that are internally assessed and those that are externally assessed.

Centres are required to take steps to prevent malpractice and to investigate instances of suspected malpractice. Learners must be given information that explains what malpractice is for internal assessment and how suspected incidents will be dealt with by the centre. The Centre Guidance: Dealing with Malpractice document gives full information on the actions we expect you to take.

Pearson may conduct investigations if we believe a centre is failing to conduct internal assessment according to our policies. The above document gives further information and examples, and details the penalties and sanctions that may be imposed.

In the interests of learners and centre staff, centres need to respond effectively and openly to all requests relating to an investigation into an incident of suspected malpractice.

3.7.1 Internally assessed units

Centres are required to take steps to prevent malpractice and to investigate instances of suspected malpractice. Students must be given information that explains what malpractice is for internal assessment and how suspected incidents will be dealt with by the Centre. Full information on dealing with malpractice and the actions we expect you to take is available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Pearson may conduct investigations if it is believed that a Centre is failing to conduct internal assessment according to Pearson policies. The above document gives further information, provides examples, and details the penalties and sanctions that may be imposed.

3.7.2 Student malpractice

The head of centre is required to report incidents of suspected learner malpractice that occur during Pearson qualifications. We ask centres to complete JCQ Form M1 (www.jcq.org.uk/malpractice) and email it with any accompanying documents (signed statements from the learner, invigilator, copies of evidence, etc) to the Investigations Processing team at candidatemalpractice@pearson.com. The responsibility for determining appropriate sanctions or penalties to be imposed on learners lies with Pearson.
Learners must be informed at the earliest opportunity of the specific allegation and the centre's malpractice policy, including the right of appeal. Learners found guilty of malpractice may be disqualified from the qualification for which they have been entered with Pearson.

Failure to report malpractice constitutes staff or centre malpractice.

3.7.3 Staff and centre malpractice

The head of centre is required to inform Pearson’s Investigations team of any incident of suspected malpractice (which includes maladministration) by centre staff, before any investigation is undertaken. The head of centre is requested to inform the Investigations team by submitting a JCQ M2 Form (downloadable from www.jcq.org.uk/malpractice) with supporting documentation to pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. Where Pearson receives allegations of malpractice from other sources (for example Pearson staff, anonymous informants), the Investigations team will conduct the investigation directly or may ask the head of centre to assist.

Pearson reserves the right in cases of suspected malpractice to withhold the issuing of results/certificates while an investigation is in progress. Depending on the outcome of the investigation, results and/or certificates may not be released or they may be withheld.

We reserve the right to withhold certification when undertaking investigations, audits and quality assurance processes. You will be notified within a reasonable period of time if this occurs.

3.7.4 Sanctions and appeals

Where malpractice is proven, we may impose sanctions or penalties, such as:

- mark reduction for affected external assessments
- disqualification from the qualification
- debarment from registration for Pearson qualifications for a period of time.

If we are concerned about your centre’s quality procedures we may impose sanctions such as:

- working with centres to create an improvement action plan
- requiring staff members to receive further training
- placing temporary suspensions on certification of learners
- placing temporary suspensions on registration of learners
- debarring staff members or the centre from delivering Pearson qualifications
- suspending or withdrawing centre approval status.
The centre will be notified if any of these apply.

Pearson has established procedures for centres that are considering appeals against penalties and sanctions arising from malpractice. Appeals against a decision made by Pearson will normally be accepted only from the head of centre (on behalf of learners and/or members or staff) and from individual members (in respect of a decision taken against them personally). Further information on appeals can be found in the JCQ Appeals booklet (https://www.jcq.org.uk/exams-office/appeals).
### 4 Programme structure

#### 4.1 Units, Credits, Total Qualification Time (TQT) and Guided Learning (GL)

The Higher National Certificate (HNC) is a Level 4 qualification made up of 120 credits. It is usually studied full-time over one year, or part-time over two years.

The Higher National Diploma (HND) is a Level 4 and Level 5 qualification made up of 240 credits. It is usually studied full-time over two years, or part-time over four years.

Pearson would expect that an HND student would have achieved at least 90 credits at Level 4 before progressing to Level 5 units. This allows for the students to submit the remaining 30 credits at Level 4 while undertaking their Level 5 study.

Students undertaking an HND who fail to successfully complete the full qualification may be awarded an HNC, if their credit achievement permits.

BTEC Higher Nationals consist of core units, specialist units and optional units:

- Core units are mandatory
- Specialist units are designed to provide a specific occupational focus to the qualification and are aligned to Professional Body standards
- Required combinations of optional units are clearly set out in the tables below.

All units are usually 15 credits in value, or a multiple thereof. These units have been designed from a learning time perspective, and are expressed in terms of **Total Qualification Time (TQT)**. TQT is an estimate of the total amount of time that could reasonably be expected to be required for a student to achieve and demonstrate the achievement of the level of attainment necessary for the award of a qualification. TQT includes undertaking each of the activities of Guided Learning, Directed Learning and Invigilated Assessment. Each 15-credit unit approximates to a Total Unit Time of 150 hours with 60 hours of Guided Learning.

**Total Qualification Time (TQT) Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours**

**Total Qualification Time (TQT) Higher National Diploma (HND) = 2,400 hours**

Examples of activities which can contribute to Total Qualification Time include:

- Guided Learning
- Independent and unsupervised research/learning
- Unsupervised compilation of a portfolio of work experience
- Unsupervised e-learning
● Unsupervised e-assessment
● Unsupervised coursework
● Watching a pre-recorded podcast or webinar
● Unsupervised work-based learning.

**Guided Learning (GL)** is defined as the time when a tutor is present to give specific guidance towards the learning aim being studied on a programme. This definition includes lectures, tutorials and supervised study in, for example, open learning centres and learning workshops. Guided Learning includes any supervised assessment activity; this includes invigilated examination and observed assessment and observed work-based practice.

**Total Guided Learning (GL)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours
**Total Guided Learning (GL)** Higher National Diploma (HND) = 960 hours

Some examples of activities which can contribute to Guided Learning include:
● Classroom-based learning supervised by a tutor
● Work-based learning supervised by a tutor
● Live webinar or telephone tutorial with a tutor in real time
● E-learning supervised by a tutor in real time
● All forms of assessment which take place under the immediate guidance or supervision of a tutor or other appropriate provider of education or training, including where the assessment is competence-based and may be turned into a learning opportunity.

### 4.2 Programme structures

The programme structures specify:
● The total credit value of the qualification
● The minimum credit to be achieved at the level of the qualification
● The core units
● The specialist units
● The optional units
● The maximum credit value in units that can be centre commissioned.

When combining units for a Pearson Higher National qualification, it is the centre’s responsibility to make sure that the correct combinations are followed.
4.2.1 Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts

Qualification credit value: a minimum of 120 credits. This is made up of eight units, each with a value of 15 credits.

**Total Qualification Time (TQT)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours

**Total Guided Learning (GL)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours

There is a required mix of Core, Specialist and Optional units totalling 120 credits.

All units are at Level 4.

In some cases a maximum of 30 credits from a Higher National qualification may be from units designed by the centre and approved by Pearson. Core units may **not** be substituted and are **mandatory**. For more information please refer to Higher National Commissioned Qualifications.

Please note that some Specialist units are available as Optional units and some Optional units are available as Specialist units.

The General pathway has been created to support students who are unsure of their chosen specialist area at this stage in their development.

Here is an example of a possible unit combination for centres who wish to offer a general HNC programme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit Number</th>
<th>Unit Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
<td>The Performing Arts Industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td>Professional Development</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following selection demonstrates a combination of unit choices available from the general optional unit bank, which cover all the specialist areas – Dance, Acting, Technical Arts and Musical Theatre – for students wishing to explore all of these areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit Number</th>
<th>Unit Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 6</td>
<td>Commercial Dance 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 20</td>
<td>Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 29</td>
<td>Crewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 17</td>
<td>Acting for Camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 16</td>
<td>Vocal Repertoire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 22</td>
<td>Stagecraft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Students can progress from the General pathway at Level 4 to any pathway at Level 5 provided they have completed the relevant core units.

However centres have the responsibility to ensure students have a reasonable expectation of success on the programme and are advised to ensure that students have the required specialist skill set to achieve level 5 units if they have not completed any level 4 units in the specialist area being studied in the HND. For example, it would not be appropriate for a student to take the Level 5 Dance pathway, if they have not had any previous training or experience in Dance. The suitability of previous training and experience is at the centre’s discretion.

Please do contact the Higher National team for any further guidance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Dance)</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Centres must select one of the following groups:

**Group A**

| Specialist unit | 4 Ballet 1 | 15 | 4 |

Plus five Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)

<p>| Optional unit | 3 Jazz Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 5 Contemporary Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 6 Commercial Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 7 Tap 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 8 American Tap | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 9 Choreography 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 10 Investigation of Specialism | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 11 Dance for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 12 Singing 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 13 Acting 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 14 Musical Theatre History in Practice | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 15 Ensemble Singing | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 16 Vocal Repertoire | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 18 Voice and Speech for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 19 Movement for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 20 Devising Theatre and Performance | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 21 Production Communication | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 22 Stagecraft | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 24 Sound Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 25 Special FX | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 26 Scenic Construction | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 27 Costume Construction | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 28 Hair and Make-up Application | 15 | 4 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>29 Crewing</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group B</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Specialist unit</strong></td>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plus five Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>12 Singing 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group C</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus five Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>12 Singing 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Musical Theatre)

| Core unit | Mandatory | 1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set) | 15 | 4 |
| Core unit | Mandatory | 2 Professional Development | 15 | 4 |
| Specialist unit | Mandatory | 3 Jazz Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Specialist unit | Mandatory | 12 Singing 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Specialist unit | Mandatory | 13 Acting 1 | 15 | 4 |

**Plus three Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)**

<p>| Optional unit | 4 Ballet 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 5 Contemporary Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 6 Commercial Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 7 Tap 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 8 American Tap | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 9 Choreography 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 10 Investigation of Specialism | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 11 Dance for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 14 Musical Theatre History in Practice | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 15 Ensemble Singing | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 16 Vocal Repertoire | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 17 Acting for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 18 Voice and Speech for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 19 Movement for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 20 Devising Theatre and Performance | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 21 Production Communication | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 22 Stagecraft | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 23 Lighting Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 24 Sound Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 25 Special FX | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 26 Scenic Construction | 15 | 4 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Unit Title</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (Acting)</td>
<td>Unit credit</td>
<td>Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core unit</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mandatory</td>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core unit</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mandatory</td>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Specialist unit</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mandatory</td>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Specialist unit</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mandatory</td>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plus four Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>12 Singing 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>17 Acting for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>23 Lighting Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Module Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Workload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus four Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)**

<p>| Optional unit | 3 Jazz Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 4 Ballet 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 5 Contemporary Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 6 Commercial Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 7 Tap 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 8 American Tap | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 9 Choreography 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 10 Investigation of Specialism | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 11 Dance for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 12 Singing 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 13 Acting 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 14 Musical Theatre History in Practice | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 15 Ensemble Singing | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 16 Vocal Repertoire | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 17 Acting for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 18 Voice and Speech for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 19 Movement for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 20 Devising Theatre and Performance | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 23 Lighting Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 24 Sound Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 25 Special FX | 15 | 4 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Level/Per week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Costume Construction</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Crewing</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15 / 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts (General)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core unit</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus six Optional Level 4 15 credit units (see below)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Singing 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Acting for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Lighting Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.2 Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma consists of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate (above) plus an additional 120 credits at Level 5 delivered via one of the following four Specialist pathways:

- Technical Arts
- Acting
- Dance
- Musical Theatre.

Students who achieved the ‘General’ pathway at Level 4, may progress onto any pathway at Level 5.

Qualification credit value: a minimum of 240 credits, of which 120 credits are at Level 5, and 120 credits are at Level 4 and usually attained via the HNC.

There is a required mix of Core, Specialist and Optional units totalling 240 credits. The Core units required for each Level 5 Specialist pathway (in addition to the Specialist units) are Unit 31: Working in the Performing Arts Industry, which is weighted at 15 credits, and Unit 30: Creative Research Project, weighted at 30 credits.

The requirements of the Higher National Certificate (or equivalent) have to be met. In some cases, a maximum of 60 credits can be imported from another RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National qualification and/or from units designed by the Centre and approved by Pearson. Core units and Specialist units may **not** be substituted.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4 units</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Centres must select one of the following groups:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group A</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Ballet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plus 5 Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 3 Jazz Dance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 5 Contemporary Dance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 6 Commercial Dance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 7 Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 9 Choreography</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 12 Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 13 Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 23 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit 26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Group B**

| Specialist unit | 3 Jazz Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |

**Plus 5 Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)**

<p>| Optional unit | 4 Ballet 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 5 Contemporary Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 6 Commercial Dance 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 7 Tap 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 8 American Tap | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 9 Choreography 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 10 Investigation of Specialism | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 11 Dance for Camera | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 12 Singing | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 13 Acting Skills | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 14 Musical Theatre History in Practice | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 15 Ensemble Singing | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 16 Vocal Repertoire | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 18 Voice and Speech for Actors 1 | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 19 Movement for Actors | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 20 Devising Theatre and Performance | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 21 Production Communication | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 23 Stagecraft | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 24 Sound Operation | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 25 Special FX | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 26 Scenic Construction | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 27 Costume Construction | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 28 Hair and Make-up Application | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | 29 Crewing | 15 | 4 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group C</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus 5 Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>12 Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>13 Acting Skills</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>23 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 5 Units</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>32 Creative Research Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>33 Working in the Performing Arts Industry</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Centres must select one of the following groups – Group D, E or F**

**Group D**

| Specialist unit | 35 Ballet 2 | 15 | 4 |

**Plus four Optional 15 credit units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34 Jazz Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 Contemporary Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 Commercial Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 Tap 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 Dance for Musical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 Partner Work</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 Contact Improvisation 1</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 Physical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 Singing 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 Acting 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 Immersive Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 Auditioning</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 Choreography 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 Classical Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 Producing Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 Voice Skills for Actors 2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 Dance for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52 Performance Project</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 Mask Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54 Production Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 Management Role</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56 Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Course Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Costume Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Hair and Make-up Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Mask and Puppet Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Working in Creative Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Special FX 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Group E**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specialist unit</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Jazz Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus four Optional 15 credit units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Ballet 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Contemporary Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Commercial Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Tap 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Dance for Musical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Partner Work</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Contact Improvisation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Physical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Singing 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Acting 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Immersive Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Auditioning</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Choreography 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Classical Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Producing Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Voice Skills for Actors 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Dance for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Performance Project</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Mask Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Production Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Management Role</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>57 Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>58 Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>59 Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>60 Costume Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>61 Hair and Make-up Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>62 Mask and Puppet Making</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>63 Working in Creative Education</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>64 Directing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>65 The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>66 Special FX 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Group F**

| Specialist unit | 36 Contemporary Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |

**Mandatory**

**Plus four Optional 15 credit units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>35 Ballet 2</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>34 Jazz Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>37 Commercial Dance 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>38 Tap 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>39 Dance for Musical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>40 Partner Work</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>41 Contact Improvisation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>42 Physical Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>43 Singing 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>44 Acting 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>45 Immersive Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>46 Auditioning</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>47 Choreography 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>48 Classical Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>49 Producing Theatre</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>50 Voice Skills for Actors 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>51 Dance for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>52 Performance Project</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>53 Mask Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Production Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Management Role</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Costume Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Hair and Make-up Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Mask and Puppet Making</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Working in Creative Education</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Directing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Special FX 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Highly recommended if coming from the General pathway at Level 4.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td><strong>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td><strong>2 Professional Development</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong>*</td>
<td><strong>3 Jazz Dance 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong>*</td>
<td><strong>13 Singing 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td><strong>Mandatory</strong>*</td>
<td><strong>14 Acting 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus three Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>4 Ballet 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>5 Contemporary Dance 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>6 Commercial Dance 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>7 Tap 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>8 American Tap</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>9 Choreography 1</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>10 Investigation of Specialism</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>11 Dance for Camera</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>12 Musical Theatre History in Practice</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>15 Ensemble Singing</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>16 Vocal Repertoire</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>17 Acting for Camera</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>19 Movement for Actors</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>21 Production Communication</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>22 Stagecraft</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>23 Lighting Operation</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>24 Sound Operation</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 5 Units:**

| Core unit | 32 Creative Research Project (Pearson-set) | 30 | 5 |
| Core unit | 33 Working in the Performing Arts Industry | 15 | 5 |
| Specialist unit | 39 Dance for Musical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Specialist unit | 43 Singing 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Specialist unit | 44 Acting 2 | 15 | 5 |

**Plus two Optional units 15 credit units (see below)**

<p>| Optional unit | 34 Jazz Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 35 Ballet 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 36 Contemporary Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 37 Commercial Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 38 Tap 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 40 Partner Work | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 41 Contact Improvisation | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 42 Physical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 45 Immersive Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 46 Auditioning | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 47 Choreography 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 48 Classical Acting | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 49 Producing Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 50 Voice Skills for Actors 2 | 15 | 5 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Dance for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Performance Project</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Mask Acting</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Production Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Management Role</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Costume Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Hair and Make-up Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Mask and Puppet Making</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Working in Creative Education</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Directing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Special FX 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Highly recommended if coming from the General pathway at Level 4.
### Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts (Acting)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4 units from Acting pathway</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus four Optional Level 4 15 credit unit (see below)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Acting for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Lighting Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make-up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 5 Units:**

| Core unit | 32 Creative Research Project (Pearson-set) | 30 | 5 |
| Core unit | 33 Working in the Performing Arts Industry | 15 | 5 |
| Specialist unit | 44 Acting 2 | 15 | 5 |

*Mandatory*

*Plus four Optional units 15 credit units from any Optional group (see below)*

<p>| Optional unit | 34 Jazz Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 35 Ballet 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 36 Contemporary Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 37 Commercial Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 38 Tap 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 39 Dance for Musical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 40 Partner Work | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 41 Contact Improvisation | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 42 Physical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 43 Singing 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 45 Immersive Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 46 Auditioning | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 47 Choreography 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 48 Classical Acting | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 49 Producing Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 50 Voice Skills for Actors 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 47 Choreography 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 51 Dance for Actors | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 52 Performance Project | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 53 Mask Acting | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 54 Production Design | 15 | 5 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>55 Management Role</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>56 Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>57 Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>58 Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>59 Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>60 Costume Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>61 Hair and Make-up Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>62 Mask and Puppet Making</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>63 Working in Creative Education</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>64 Directing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>65 The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>66 Special FX 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Highly recommended if coming from the General pathway at Level 4.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4 units from Technical Arts pathway</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 1 The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 2 Professional Development</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory* 21 Production Communication</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory* 22 Stagecraft</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus four Optional Level 4 15 credit unit from level 4 unit bank**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Ballet 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Tap 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 American Tap</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Choreography 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Dance for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Singing 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Acting 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Musical Theatre History in Practice</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Acting for Camera</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Movement for Actors</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Lighting Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Sound Operation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Special FX</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Scenic Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>27 Costume Construction</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>28 Hair and Make up Application</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>29 Crewing</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>30 Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>31 Period Hair and Makeup</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 5 Units:**

| Core unit | 32 Creative Research Project (Pearson-set) | 30 | 5 |
| Core unit | 33 Working in the Performing Arts Industry | 15 | 5 |
| Specialist unit | 55 Management Role | 15 | 5 |

Plus four Optional units 15 credit units from any Optional group (see below)

<p>| Optional unit | 34 Jazz Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 35 Ballet 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 36 Contemporary Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 37 Commercial Dance 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 38 Tap 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 39 Dance for Musical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 40 Partner Work | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 41 Contact Improvisation | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 42 Physical Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 43 Singing 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 44 Acting 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 45 Immersive Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 46: Auditioning | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 47 Choreography 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 48: Classical Acting | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 49 Producing Theatre | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2 | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 51 Dance for Actors | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 52 Performance Project | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 53: Mask Acting | 15 | 5 |
| Optional unit | 54 Production Design | 15 | 5 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Module Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Sound Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Lighting Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Set Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Stage Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Costume Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Hair and Make-up Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Mask and Puppet Making</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Working in Creative Education</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Directing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Special FX 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Highly recommended if coming from the General pathway at Level 4.
4.2.3  Meeting local needs (MLN)

Centres should note that Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications have been developed in consultation with centres, employers and relevant professional organisations. The units were designed to meet the skill needs of the sector and thereby allow coverage of the full range of employment within the sector. Centres should make maximum use of the choices available to them within the specialist pathways to meet the needs of their students, as well as the local skills and training needs.

Where centres identify a specific need that cannot be addressed using the units in this specification, centres can seek approval to use units from other RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications, through the MLN process (refer to Commissioned qualification design and validation service of our website http://qualifications.pearson.com or get in touch your Pearson regional contact for application details. Centres will need to justify the rationale for importing units from other RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National specifications. Meeting local need applications must be made in advance of delivery and before 31 January in the year of student registration.

The flexibility to import standard units from other RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National specifications is limited to a maximum of 30 credits in a BTEC HNC qualification and a maximum of 60 credits in a BTEC HND qualification (30 credits at Level 4 and 30 credits at Level 5). This is an overall maximum of units that can be imported. MLN units cannot be used at the expense of the mandatory units in any qualification nor can the qualification’s rules of combination, as detailed in the specification, be compromised. It is the responsibility of the centre requesting the MLN to ensure that approved units are used only in eligible combinations.

For the Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate and Pearson BTEC Level 5 Diploma in Performing Arts, the maximum number of credits that can be imported by pathway are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qualification</th>
<th>Pathway</th>
<th>Import at Level 4</th>
<th>Import at Level 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HNC in Performing Arts</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acting</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dance</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Musical Theatre</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Technical Arts</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.2.4 Pearson BTEC Higher National Commissioned Development

Where MLN does not provide enough flexibility in terms of qualification structure, centres can request design and development of units by Pearson to meet their specific needs. This is offered by the following types of developments; full commission or partial commission.

We would be pleased to discuss your ideas for a Pearson BTEC Higher National Commissioned Development. For more information please refer to the *Commissioned qualification design and validation service* on our website http://qualifications.pearson.com

Once the centre is ready to proceed with a commissioned development, an application must be made, which provides a clear rationale for the development request. Pearson will review the application and may confirm or deny the request. The commissioned unit(s) will be authored by Pearson, in full consultation within the commissioning centre. Applications must be made one year in advance of the first year of commissioned unit(s) delivery.

### 4.3 Pearson-set Assignments

There are Pearson-set assignments as part of the core units. Each year, Pearson will issue a *Theme* and (for Level 4) a set of related *Topics*. Centres will develop an assignment, to be internally assessed, to engage students in work related to the Pearson-set Theme.

At Level 4, tutors will select a Topic to further define their approach to the Theme and assignment. At Level 5, it is expected that students will define their own Topic, in negotiation with Tutors, based on the Pearson-set Theme.

For example, from the Higher Nationals in Business:

**Theme:** “Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) and its importance for sustainability and competitive advantage”

**Level 4 Topics:**
- How to start up a socially responsible company
- The impact of CSR on a functional area (e.g. HR, Marketing, Finance) within an organisation to promote profitability and financial sustainability.
- Implementing CSR activities within organisations to meet sustainability objectives.
Centres can find relevant support in the Pearson-set Assignment Guidance for the units, and the theme and topic release documentation which will be provided for each level.

The aim of the Pearson-set assignments is to provide a common framework for centres to develop work that will allow cross-sector benchmarking, through the standardisation of student work, and identification and sharing of ‘best practice.’ in higher education teaching and learning. Pearson will share the ‘best practice’ results with all centres. For further information about Pearson-set Assignments and assessment, see section 6 of this document.

### 4.4 The unit descriptor

The Unit Descriptor is how we define the individual units of study that make up a Higher National qualification. Students will study and complete the units included in the programme offered at your centre.

We have described each part of the unit, as below. You may refer to any of the Unit Descriptors in Section 10 of this programme specification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Unit Title</strong></th>
<th>A broad statement of what the unit will cover.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit Code</strong></td>
<td>The Ofqual unit designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit Type</strong></td>
<td>There are three unit types: core (mandatory to all pathways); specialist (mandatory to specific pathways); and optional (available to most pathways)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit level</strong></td>
<td>All Pearson BTEC Higher National units are at Level 4 or Level 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Credit value</strong></td>
<td>The credit value is related to total qualification time (TQT) and unit learning hours (ULH), and is easy to calculate. 1 credit is equal to 10 ULH, so 15 credits are equal to 150 ULH. To complete a Higher National Certificate or Diploma students are expected to achieve the appropriate number of credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>Some general notes on the unit, setting the scene, stating the purpose, outlining the topics and skills gained on completion of the unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Learning Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>The Learning Outcomes are explicit statements that clearly express what students will be able to do after the completion of the unit. There are, typically, four Learning Outcomes for each unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Essential Content</strong></td>
<td>This section covers the content that students can expect to study as they work towards achieving their Learning Outcomes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</strong></td>
<td>Each unit sets out the ‘Pass’, ‘Merit’ and ‘Distinction’ criteria for that unit. When assignments are graded, a tutor will refer to this table, which connects the unit’s Learning Outcomes with the student's work. This assignment may be graded at ‘Pass’, ‘Merit’ or ‘Distinction level, depending on the quality of the students work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommended Resources</strong></td>
<td>Lists the resources appropriate to support the study of this unit. This includes books, journals and online material to support learning. The programme tutor may suggest alternatives and additions, usually with a local application or relevance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Web resources – referencing:

Some units have web resources as part of their recommended resources lists. Hyperlinking to these resources directly can be problematic as locations and addresses of resources can change over time. To combat this we have referenced web resources as follows:

[1] A link to the main page of the website
[2] The title of the site
[3] The name of the section or element of the website where the resource can be found
[4] The type of resource it is, which may be one of the following –

- research
- general reference
- tutorials
- training
- e-books
- report
- wiki
- article
- datasets
- development tool
- discussion forum

Web

[3] Homepage

[3] Homepage
5 Teaching and learning

The aim of this section is to provide guidance to Centres so that they can engage students in a dynamic, interactive and reflective learning experience. This experience should effectively prepare students to successfully engage in the assessments, which will measure depth, as well as breadth, of knowledge. Teaching should stimulate academic engagement, develop challenging yet constructive discourse and encourage students to reflect on their own performance in preparation for a professional career. Additionally, Centres are encouraged to expose students to autonomous and independent learning, which will facilitate the development of their academic skills, experiences and the techniques required as they progress from one level of study to the next.

Centres are encouraged to develop programmes that have a distinctive focus on entry into work, delivering a curriculum that embeds employability, has a strong commitment to ethics and diversity, and introduces students to contemporary as well as seminal research. All teaching and learning should reflect the expectations of employers and society, and be informed and guided by external benchmarks such as professional and statutory bodies. In so doing students completing a Higher National in Performing Arts will have the attributes, skills, principles and behaviours that will enable them to make a valuable contribution to local, national and international commerce.

The contributions students make to their own experiences, alongside the experience of their peers, is invaluable. Student engagement and the student voice should form a significant aspect of a student's life. Centres are encouraged to gather student opinions on a range of teaching and learning matters, which would be used to inform and enhance future practice within a programme of study and within a Centre.

5.1 Delivering quality and depth

A high-quality teaching and learning experience should include qualified and experienced lecturers, an interactive and engaging curriculum, motivated and inspired students, and a support system that caters for the pastoral as well as academic interests of students.

In addition to delivering a quality learning experience, Centres must also encourage students to have a deeper understanding of the subject where they are able to go beyond the fundamentals of explaining and describing. Students are expected to show they can analyse data and information, make sense of this and then reach evaluative judgements. At the higher levels of study there is an expectation that students will be able to apply a degree of criticality to their synthesis of knowledge. This criticality would come from exposure to appropriate and relevant theories, concepts and models.
One of the reasons for delivering a quality learning experience, which has depth as well as breadth, is the benchmarking of the qualification to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). It also meets requirements set by the Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF). The first stage of a Higher National in Performing Arts is the Higher National Certificate (HNC), which is aligned with Level 4 of both frameworks; with the Higher National Diploma (HND) aligned with Level 5. This means that the HNC has the same level of demand and expectations as the first year of a degree programme, with the HND having the same level of demand and expectations as the second year of a degree programme.

Centres are expected to provide a broadly similar experience for students to that which they would have if they attended a similar programme at a university. This could mean:

- Providing access to library facilities which has, as a minimum, available copies (physically and/or electronically) of all required reading material
- Access to research papers and journals
- Utilising a virtual learning environment (VLE) to support teaching
- Working with local employers (see below) to present real-life case studies
- Creating schemes of work that embrace a range of teaching and learning techniques
- Listening to the student voice.

Irrespective of the type of programme on which a student is enrolled, it is highly advisable that students are inducted onto their Higher National programme. This induction should include an introduction to the course programme and academic study skills that will be essential in supporting their research and studies, and, therefore, enhance the learning experience.

An induction programme should consist of the following:

- Course programme overview
- Preparing for lessons
- Effective engagement in lectures and seminars
- Making the most out of their tutor
- Assignment requirements
- Referencing and plagiarism
- Centre policies
- Academic study skills.
Pearson offer Higher National Global Study Skills to all students – an online toolkit that supports the delivery, assessment and quality assurance of BTECs in Centres. This is available on the HN Global website www.highernationals.com. HN Global provides a wealth of support to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course. With HN Global, students can search, share, comment, rank and sort a vast range of learning resources via an online digital library and tutors can create and annotate reading lists for students.

5.2 Engaging with employers

Just as the student voice is important, so too is the employer’s. Employers play a significant role in the design and development of all regulated qualifications, including the Higher Nationals in Performing Arts. This input should extend into the learning experience, where engagement with employers will add value to students, particularly in transferring theory into practice.

Centres should consider a range of employer engagement activities. These could include:

- Field trips to local theatres
- Inviting members of the local performing arts community to present guest lectures
- Using employers to judge the quality of assessed presentations and/or products
- (For the more entrepreneurial) establishing a panel of experts who students can pitch an idea to.

While detailed guidance on assessment has been provided in this specification (see Section 6), it is worth considering the involvement of employers when determining assessment strategies and the use of different assessment methods. This enables Centres to design assessments that are more closely related to what students would be doing in the workplace. Employers are able to comment on relevance and content, as well as the challenge presented by an assessment. Notwithstanding this, ultimately it is the Centre’s responsibility to judge the extent to which any employer contributes to teaching and learning.

5.3 Engaging with students

Students are integral to teaching and learning. As such it is important that they are involved as much as possible with most aspects of the programme on to which they are enrolled. This input could include taking into account their views on how teaching and learning will take place, their role in helping to design a curriculum, or on the assessment strategy that will test their knowledge and understanding.
There are many ways in which to capture the student voice and student feedback, both formal and informal. Formal mechanisms include the nomination of student representatives to act as the collective student voice for each student cohort, student representation at course team meetings, and an elected Higher Education representative as part of the Student Union. Student forums should also take place periodically throughout the year with minutes and action plans updated and informing the overall annual course monitoring process. Unit specific feedback can also be collated by students completing unit feedback forms, end of year course evaluations, and scheduled performance review meetings with their tutor.

However, this should not be the only time when feedback from students is sought. Discourse with students should be constant, whereby teachers adopt a ‘reflection on action’ approach to adjust teaching, so that students are presented with an environment that is most supportive of their learning styles. Just as employers could have an input into assessment design, so too could students. This will support the development of assignments that are exciting and dynamic, and fully engage students in meaningful and informative assessment.

The biggest advantage of consulting students on their teaching, learning and assessment is securing their engagement in their own learning. Students are likely to feel empowered and develop a sense of ownership of all matters related to teaching, learning and assessment, not just their own experiences. Students could also view themselves as more accountable to their lecturers, ideally seeing themselves as partners in their own learning and not just part of a process.

5.4 Planning and structuring a programme

Learning should be challenging yet exciting; teaching should be motivating and inspirational. Consequently, both teaching and learning should form part of a programme structure that is active, flexible and progressive, and has an industry focus wherever possible.

It is important for a programme structure to be effectively planned, taking into account the nature of the student cohort, the primary mode of delivery (face-to-face or distance learning) and the level of study. It is also advisable to consider the student voice (whether that voice is heard through end of programme feedback, or through on-going dialogue) when planning how and when students will be exposed to a particular subject. One other vital source of information that centres would do well to embrace is the feedback from tutors who have been and/or will be delivering learning.
It is recommended that centres establish a programme planning forum where various stakeholders are represented. This forum could consider different perspectives of teaching and learning and how these are planned into an effective programme structure. Consideration could be given to, for example, the holistic and consistent use of Virtual Learning Environments (VLEs), a programme of field trips, a strategy for engaging with employers, and how and when to assess learning.

Consideration should be given to a number of factors when planning a programme structure. These include:

- The sequencing of units
- Whether to have condensed or expanded delivery
- Teaching and learning techniques.

### 5.4.1 Sequencing units

The level of demand embedded within a unit is benchmarked to recognised standards. This applies to all units within a level of study, and this means that all Level 4 units have similar demands, as do all Level 5 units. However, this does not mean that units can, or should, be delivered in any order. For example, in the Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts it is strongly advised that Level 4 units are delivered, and achieved, by students before progression to Level 5. However, students are able to progress to level 5 with a minimum of 90 credits at Level 4.

Within each level it is advisable to sequence units so that those providing fundamental knowledge and understanding are scheduled early in the programme. It may also be advisable to schedule the assessment of units requiring the practice and application of more advanced skills later in the programme.
5.4.2 Condensed and expanded delivery

The next consideration is whether to deliver a unit in a condensed format alongside other units, or to deliver units over an expanded period. The following tables provide examples of this, based on four units being delivered in one teaching block.

**Condensed version:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks 1 to 6</th>
<th>Week 7</th>
<th>Weeks 8 to 13</th>
<th>Week 14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Unit 3</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expanded version:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks 1 to 12</th>
<th>Weeks 13 and 14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The decision to deliver a condensed, expanded or mixed programme would depend on a number of factors, including availability of resources, the subjects to be taught and the requirements of students. Each version has advantages: the condensed version would provide an opportunity for students to gain early success and achievement. This will enhance their self-efficacy, the sense of one's belief in one's ability to succeed, and self-confidence, with tutors being able to identify and respond to less able students early in the teaching and learning cycle.

The advantages of the expanded version include providing a longer timescale for students to absorb new knowledge and therefore, potentially, improve success, and giving tutors an opportunity to coach and support less able students over a longer period of time.

The mixed version, with some units spanning over the entire period and others lasting for shorter periods, provides opportunities for learning in some units to support development in others. This format may be particularly suited to a combination of practical and theoretical units. In all cases, the choice of which type of unit sequence must consider student opportunities as well as staff and physical resources of the centre.

As there are pros and cons to both approaches, the use of a planning forum would help to ensure the most appropriate approach is taken. For example, centres could chose to deliver the first teaching block using the expanded version, with the subsequent teaching block being delivered through a condensed approach.

It should be noted that the above consideration would apply equally to programmes that are being delivered face-to-face or through distance learning.
### 5.4.3 Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques

As part of planning the range of techniques that will be used to deliver the syllabus, centres should also consider an appropriate combination of techniques for the subject.

The table below lists some of the techniques that centres could introduce into a planned programme structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Face-to-face</th>
<th>Distance learning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures and seminars</td>
<td>These are the most common techniques used by tutors. They offer an opportunity to engage with a large number of students, where the focus is on sharing knowledge through the use of presentations.</td>
<td>Delivery would be through video conferencing and/or pre-recorded audio and/or visual material, available through an online platform. Synchronous discussion forums could also be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshops</td>
<td>These are used to build on knowledge shared via tutors and seminars. Teaching can be more in-depth where knowledge is applied, for example to case studies or real-life examples. Workshops could be student-led, where students present, for example, findings from independent study.</td>
<td>While more challenging to organise than for face-to-face delivery, workshops should not be dismissed. Smaller groups of three or four students could access a forum simultaneously and engage in the same type of activity as for face-to-face.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>These present an opportunity for focused one-to-one support, where teaching is led by an individual student's requirements. These can be most effective in the run up to assessment, where tutors can provide more focused direction, perhaps based on a formative assessment.</td>
<td>Other than not necessarily being in the same room as a student, tutors could still provide effective tutorials. Video conferencing tools provide the means to see a student, which makes any conversation more personal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique</td>
<td>Face-to-face</td>
<td>Distance learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Learning Environments (VLEs)</td>
<td>These are invaluable to students studying on a face-to-face programme. Used effectively, VLEs not only provide a repository for taught material such as presentation slides or handouts, but could be used to set formative tasks such as quizzes. Further reading could also be located on a VLE, along with a copy of the programme documents, such as the handbook and assessment timetable.</td>
<td>A VLE is a must if students are engaged with online delivery through distance or blended learning, as this would be the primary or the key source of learning. Where distance learning is primarily delivered through hard copies of workbooks, etc., the same principle would apply as for face-to-face learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blended learning</td>
<td>The combination of traditional face-to-face learning and online learning. This can enable the students to gain personalised support, instruction and guidance while completing assigned activities and tasks remotely.</td>
<td>Offline learning enables students to develop autonomy and self-discipline by completing set activities and tasks with limited direction and traditional classroom-based constraints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work-based learning</td>
<td>Any opportunity to integrate work-based learning into a curriculum should be taken. This adds realism and provides students with an opportunity to link theory to practice in a way in which case studies do not. Many full-time students are involved in some form of employment, either paid or voluntary, which could be used, where appropriate, as part of their learning, for example when assignments require students to contextualise a response to a real organisation.</td>
<td>It is likely that the majority of distance learning students would be employed and possibly classed as mature students. Bringing theory to life through a curriculum, which requires work-based application of knowledge, would make learning for these students more relevant and meaningful. Perhaps more importantly, assessment should be grounded in a student's place of work, wherever possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique</td>
<td>Face-to-face</td>
<td>Distance learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest speakers</td>
<td>These could be experts from industry or visiting academics in the subject area that is being studied. They could be used to present a lecture/seminar, a workshop or to contribute to assessment. The objective is to make the most effective use of an expert’s knowledge and skill by adding value to the teaching and learning experience.</td>
<td>As long as the expert has access to the same platform as the students then the value-added contribution would still be very high. Consideration would need to be given to timings and logistics, but with some innovative management this technique would still have a place in distance learning programmes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field trips</td>
<td>Effectively planned field trips, which have a direct relevance to the syllabus, would add value to the learning experience. Through these trips students could relate theory to practice, have an opportunity to experience organisations in action, and potentially open their minds to career routes.</td>
<td>The use of field trips could be included as part of a distance learning programme. They will add the same value and require the same planning. One additional benefit of field trips for distance learning is that they provide an opportunity for all students in a cohort to meet, which is a rare occurrence for distance learning students.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.4 Assessment considerations

Centres should design assessment for learning. This is where an assessment strategy requires students to engage with a variety of assessment tools that are accessible, appropriately challenging, and support the development of student self-efficacy and self-confidence. To ensure that assignments are valid and reliable, Centres must implement robust Quality Assurance measures and monitor the effectiveness of their implementation (see Section 7 of this Programme Specification). This includes ensuring that all students engage in assessment positively and honestly.

Assessment also provides a learning opportunity for all stakeholders of the assessment to have access to feedback that is both individual to each student and holistic to the cohort. Feedback to students should be supportive and constructive. Student self-efficacy (and, therefore, self-confidence) can be significantly enhanced where feedback not only focuses on areas for improvement but recognises the strengths a student has. At the cohort level, similar trends could be identified that inform future approaches to assessments and teaching. Assessment is an integral part of the overall learning process and assessment strategy must be developed to support effective, reflective, thinking performing arts practitioners for the future. Assessment can be either formative, summative or both.

### 5.4.5 Formative assessment

Formative assessment is primarily developmental in nature and designed to give feedback to students on their performance and progress. Assessment designed formatively should develop and consolidate knowledge, understanding, skills and competencies. It is a key part of the learning process and can enhance learning and contribute to raising standards.

Through formative assessment tutors can identify students’ differing learning needs early on in the programme and so make timely corrective interventions. Tutors can also reflect on the results of formative assessment to measure how effective the planned teaching and learning is at delivering the syllabus. Each student should receive one set of written formative feedback, otherwise some students may feel that others are being given more than their share of verbal feedback.

### 5.4.6 Summative assessment

Summative assessment is where students are provided with the assignment grades contributing towards the overall unit grade. For summative assessment to be effective it should also give students additional formative feedback to support on-going development and improvement in subsequent assignments. All formative assessment feeds directly into the summative assessment for each unit and lays the foundations from which students develop the necessary knowledge and skills required for the summative assessment.
5.4.7 Assessment feedback

Effective assessment feedback is part of continuous guided learning which promotes learning and enables improvement. It also allows students to reflect on their performance and helps them understand how to make effective use of feedback. Constructive and useful feedback should enable students to understand the strengths and limitations of their performance, providing positive comments where possible as well as explicit comments on how improvements can be made. Feedback should reflect the learning outcomes and assessment criteria to also help students understand how these inform the process of judging the overall grade.

The timing of the provision of feedback and of the returned assessed work also contributes to making feedback effective. Specific turnaround time for feedback should be agreed and communicated with both tutors and students. Timing should allow students the opportunity to reflect on the feedback and consider how to make use of it in forthcoming assessments, taking into account the tutor’s workload and ability to provide effective feedback.

5.4.8 Designing valid and reliable assessments

To help ensure valid and reliable assignments are designed and are consistent across all units, Centres could consider a number of actions.

Use of language

The first aspect of an assignment that a Centre could focus on is ensuring that language makes tasks/questions more accessible to students.

Due consideration must be given to the command verbs (i.e. the verbs used in unit assessment criteria) when considering the Learning Outcomes of a unit. Assignments must use appropriate command verbs that equate to the demand of the learning outcome. If the outcome requires ‘analysis’ then ‘evaluative’ requirements within the assignment must not be set when testing that outcome. This would be viewed as over-assessing. Similarly, it is possible to under-assess where analytical demands are tested using, for example, explanatory command verbs.

The following can be used as a guide to support assignment design.

- Ensure there is a holistic understanding (by tutors and students) and use of command verbs.
- Set assignment briefs that use a single command verb, focusing on the highest level of demand expected for the learning outcome(s) that is (are) being tested.
- Assignments should be supported by additional guidance that helps students to interpret the demand of the assessment criteria.
● Time-constrained assessments should utilise the full range of command verbs (or acceptable equivalents) appropriate to the academic level. Modes of time-constrained assessments include in-class tests and exams that could be both open- or closed-book. Centres should pay close consideration to ensuring tests and exams are not replicated during the course of the year.

**Consistency**

This relates to the consistency of presentation and structure, the consistent use of appropriate assessment language, and the consistent application of grading criteria. Where assignments are consistent, reliability is enhanced. Where validity is present in assignments this will result in assignments that are fit for purpose and provide a fair and equitable opportunity for all students to engage with the assignment requirements.

**Employing a range of assessment tools**

Just as variation in teaching methods used is important to the planning of a programme structure, so too is the use of a range of assessment tools appropriate to the unit and its content. Centres should consider taking a holistic view of assessment, ensuring a balanced assessment approach with consideration given to the subject being tested and what is in the best interests of students. As mentioned above, consultation with employers could add a sense of realism to an assessment strategy. (A comprehensive list of assessment tools is provided in Section 6.2 Setting effective assignments).

No matter what tool is used, assignments should have a sector focus (whether this is in a workplace context or through a case study), and be explicitly clear in its instructions. In the absence of a case study, a scenario should be used to provide some context. Finally, students should be clear on the purpose of the assignment and which elements of the unit it is targeting.
6 Assessment

BTEC Higher Nationals in Performing Arts are assessed using a combination of internally assessed centre-devised internal assignments (which are set and marked by centres) and internally assessed Pearson-set assignments (which are set by Pearson and marked by centres). Pearson-set assignments are mandatory and target particular industry-specific skills. The number and value of these units are dependent on qualification size:

For the HNC, one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;

For the HND, two core units: one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 and one core, 30 credit, unit at Level 5, will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;

All other units are assessed by Centre-devised internal assignments.

The purpose and rationale of having Pearson-set units on Higher Nationals is as follows:

- **Standardisation of student work** – Assessing the quality of student work, that it is meeting the level and the requirements of the unit across all centres, that grade decisions and assessor feedback are justified, and that internal verification and moderation processes are picking up any discrepancies and issues.

- **Sharing of good practice** – We will share good practice in relation to themes such as innovative approaches to delivery, the use of digital literacy, enhancement of student employability skills and employer engagement. These themes will align to those for QAA Higher Education Reviews.

An appointed External Examiner (EE) for the centre will ask to sample the Pearson-set assignment briefs in advance of the external examination visit. Although this is not a mandatory requirement for centres, we strongly advise that centres seek guidance and support from their EE on the Pearson-set assignments. The EE may also include the Pearson-set units in their sample of student work during their centre visit.

We have taken great care to ensure that the assessment method chosen is appropriate to the content of the unit and in line with requirements from professional bodies, employers and higher education.

In developing an overall plan for delivery and assessment for the programme, you will need to consider the order in which you deliver units, whether delivery will take place over short or long periods of time, and when assessment can take place.
Example Assessment Briefs

Each unit has supporting Example Assessment Briefs (EABs) that are available to download from the course materials section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/). The example assessment briefs are there to give you an example of what the assessment will look like in terms of the feel and level of demand of the assessment.

The EABs, with the exception of the mandatory Pearson-set unit, provide tutors with suggested types of assignment and structure that must be adapted accordingly.

6.1 Principles of internal assessment

This section gives an overview of the key features of internal assessment and how you, as an approved Centre, can offer it effectively. The full requirements and operational information are given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/). All of the assessment team will need to refer to this document.

For BTEC Higher Nationals it is important that you can meet the expectations of stakeholders and the needs of students by providing a programme that is practical and applied. Centres can tailor programmes to meet local needs and should use links with local employers and the wider business sector.

When internal assessment is operated effectively it is challenging, engaging, practical and up to date. It must also be fair to all students and meet national standards.

6.1.1 Assessment through assignments

For internally assessed units the format of assessment is an assignment taken after the content of the unit, or part of the unit if several assignments are used, has been fully delivered. An assignment may take a variety of forms, including practical and written types. An assignment is a distinct activity completed independently by students (either alone or in a team). An assignment is separate from teaching, practice, exploration and other activities that students complete with direction from and, formative assessment by, tutors.

An assignment is issued to students as an assignment brief with a hand-out date, a completion date and clear requirements for the evidence that students are expected to provide. There may be specific observed practical components during the assignment period. Assignments can be divided into separate parts and may require several forms of evidence. A valid assignment will enable a clear and formal assessment outcome based on the assessment criteria.
6.1.2 Assessment decisions through applying unit-based criteria

Assessment decisions for BTEC Higher Nationals are based on the specific criteria given in each unit and set at each grade level. The criteria for each unit have been defined according to a framework to ensure that standards are consistent in the qualification and across the suite as a whole. The way in which individual units are written provides a balance of assessment of understanding, practical skills and vocational attributes appropriate to the purpose of the qualifications.

The assessment criteria for a unit are hierarchical and holistic. For example, if an M criterion requires the student to show ‘analysis’ and the related P criterion requires the student to ‘explain’, then to satisfy the M criterion a student will need to cover both ‘explain’ and ‘analyse’. The unit assessment grid shows the relationships among the criteria so that assessors can apply all the criteria to the student’s evidence at the same time. In Appendix 1 we have set out a definition of terms that assessors need to understand.

Assessors must show how they have reached their decisions using the criteria in the assessment records. When a student has completed all the assessment for a unit then the assessment team will give a grade for the unit. This is given simply according to the highest level for which the student is judged to have met all the criteria. Therefore:

- **to achieve a Pass**, a student must have satisfied all the Pass criteria for the Learning Outcomes, showing coverage of the unit content and therefore attainment at Level 4 or 5 of the national framework
- **to achieve a Merit**, a student must have satisfied all the Merit criteria (and, therefore, the Pass criteria) through high performance in each learning outcome
- **to achieve a Distinction**, a student must have satisfied all the Distinction criteria (and therefore the Pass and Merit criteria), and these define outstanding performance across the unit as a whole.

The award of a Pass is a defined level of performance and cannot be given solely on the basis of a student completing assignments. Students who do not satisfy the Pass criteria should be reported as Unclassified.

6.1.3 The assessment team

It is important that there is an effective team for internal assessment. There are three key roles involved in implementing assessment processes in your Centre, each with different interrelated responsibilities, and these roles are listed below. Full information is given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).
● **The Programme Leader** has overall responsibility for the programme, its assessment and internal verification to meet our requirements, record-keeping and liaison with the EE. The Programme Leader registers with annually Pearson and acts as an assessor, supports the rest of the assessment team, makes sure they have the information they need about our assessment requirements, and organises training, making use of our guidance and support materials.

● **Internal Verifiers** (IVs) oversee all assessment activity in consultation with the Programme Leader. They check that assignments and assessment decisions are valid and that they meet our requirements. IVs will be standardised by working with the Programme Leader. Normally, IVs are also assessors, but they do not verify their own assessments.

● **Assessors** set or use assignments to assess students to national standards. Before taking any assessment decisions, assessors participate in standardisation activities led by the Programme Leader. They work with the Programme Leader and IVs to ensure that the assessment is planned and carried out in line with our requirements.

● Your EE will sample student work across assessors. Your EE will also want to see evidence of internal verification of assignments and assessment decisions.

### 6.1.4 Effective organisation

Internal assessment needs to be well organised so that student progress can be tracked and so that we can monitor that assessment is being carried out in line with national standards. We support you in this through, for example, providing training materials and sample documentation. Our online HN Global service can also help support you in planning and record-keeping.

It is particularly important that you manage the overall assignment programme and deadlines to make sure that all your students are able to complete assignments on time.

### 6.1.5 Student preparation

To ensure that you provide effective assessment for your students, you need to make sure that they understand their responsibilities for assessment and the Centre’s arrangements. From induction onwards, you will want to ensure that students are motivated to work consistently and independently to achieve the requirements of the qualifications. They need to understand how assignments are used, the importance of meeting assignment deadlines, and that all the work submitted for assessment must be their own.
You will need to give your students a guide that explains:

- how assignments are used for assessment
- how assignments relate to the teaching programme
- how students should use and reference source materials, including what would constitute plagiarism.

The guide should also set out your Centre’s approach to operating assessments, such as how students must submit assignments/work and the consequences of submitting late work and the procedure for requesting extensions for mitigating circumstances.

You will need to give your students a guide that explains:

- How assignments are used for assessment
- How assignments relate to the teaching programme
- How students should use and reference source materials, including what would constitute plagiarism.

The guide should also set out your centre’s approach to operating assessments, such as how students must submit assignments/work and the consequences of submitting late work and the procedure for requesting extensions for mitigating circumstances.

6.2  Setting effective assessments

6.2.1  Setting the number and structure of assignments

In setting your assessments you need to work with the structure of assessments shown in the relevant section of a unit. This shows the learning aims and outcomes and the criteria that you are expected to follow.

Pearson provide online EABs for each unit to support you in developing and designing your own assessments.

In designing your own assignment briefs you should bear in mind the following points.

- The number of assignments for a unit must not exceed the number of Learning Outcomes listed in the unit descriptor. However, you may choose to combine assignments, either to cover a number of Learning Outcomes or to create a single assignment for the entire unit.

- You may also choose to combine all or parts of different units into single assignments, provided that all units and all their associated Learning Outcomes are fully addressed in the programme overall. If you choose to take this approach you need to make sure that students are fully prepared, so that they can provide all the required evidence for assessment, and that you are able to track achievement in assessment records.
• A learning outcome must always be assessed as a whole and must not be split into two or more elements.

• The assignment must be targeted to the Learning Outcomes but the Learning Outcomes and their associated criteria are not tasks in themselves. Criteria are expressed in terms of the outcome shown in the evidence.

You do not have to follow the order of the Learning Outcomes of a unit in setting assignments, but later Learning Outcomes often require students to apply the content of earlier Learning Outcomes, and they may require students to draw their learning together.

Assignments must be structured to allow students to demonstrate the full range of achievement at all grade levels. Students need to be treated fairly by being given the opportunity to achieve a higher grade, if they have the ability to do so.

As assignments provide a final assessment, they will draw on the specified range of teaching content for the Learning Outcomes. The specified unit content must be taught/delivered. The evidence for assessment need not cover every aspect of the teaching content, as students will normally be given particular examples, case studies or contexts in their assignments. For example, if a student is carrying out one practical performance, or an investigation of one organisation, then they will address all the relevant range of content that applies in that instance.

6.2.2 Providing an assignment brief

A good assignment brief is one that, through providing challenging and authentic sector/work-related tasks, motivates students to provide appropriate evidence of what they have learned.

An assignment brief should have:

• a vocational scenario: this could be a simple situation or a full, detailed set of vocational requirements that motivates the student to apply their learning through the assignment

• clear instructions to the student about what they are required to do, normally set out through a series of tasks

• an audience or purpose for which the evidence is being provided

• an explanation of how the assignment relates to the unit(s) being assessed.
6.2.3 Forms of evidence

BTEC Higher Nationals have always allowed for a variety of forms of assessment evidence to be used, provided they are suited to the type of Learning Outcomes being assessed. For many units, the practical demonstration of skills is necessary and, for others, students will need to carry out their own research and analysis, working independently or as part of a team.

The Example Assessment Briefs give you information on what would be suitable forms of evidence to give students the opportunity to apply a range of employability or transferable skills. Centres may choose to use different suitable forms of evidence to those proposed. Overall, students should be assessed using varied forms of evidence.

These are some of the main types of assessment:

- written reports, essays
- in-class tests
- examinations
- creation of financial documents
- creation of planning documents
- work-based projects
- academic posters, displays, leaflets
- PowerPoint (or similar) presentations
- recordings of interviews/role plays
- working logbooks, reflective journals
- presentations with assessor questioning
- time-constrained assessment.
- (Full definitions of different types of assessment are given in Appendix 2.)

The form(s) of evidence selected must:

- allow the student to provide all the evidence required for the Learning Outcomes and the associated assessment criteria at all grade levels
- allow the student to produce evidence that is their own independent work
- allow a verifier to independently reassess the student to check the assessor’s decisions.

For example, when you are using performance evidence, you need to think about how supporting evidence can be captured through recordings, photographs or task sheets.
Centres need to take particular care that students are enabled to produce independent work. For example, if students are asked to use real examples, then best practice would be to encourage them to use examples of their own or to give the group a number of examples that can be used in varied combinations.

6.3 Making valid assessment decisions

6.3.1 Authenticity of student work
An assessor must assess only student work that is authentic, i.e. the student's own independent work. Students must authenticate the evidence that they provide for assessment through signing a declaration stating that it is their own work. A student declaration must state that:

- evidence submitted for the assignment is the student's own
- the student understands that false declaration is a form of malpractice.

Assessors must ensure that evidence is authentic to a student through setting valid assignments and supervising them during the assessment period. Assessors must also take care not to provide direct input, instructions or specific feedback that may compromise authenticity.

Centres may use Pearson templates or their own templates to document authentication.

During assessment, an assessor may suspect that some or all of the evidence from a student is not authentic. The assessor must then take appropriate action using the Centre's policies for malpractice. (See Section 3.7 in this Programme Specification for further information.)

6.3.2 Making assessment decisions using criteria
Assessors make judgements using the criteria. The evidence from a student can be judged using all the relevant criteria at the same time. The assessor needs to make a judgement against each criterion that evidence is present and sufficiently comprehensive. For example, the inclusion of a concluding section may be insufficient to satisfy a criterion requiring 'evaluation'.

Assessors should use the following information and support in reaching assessment decisions.

- The explanation of key terms in Appendix 3 of this document.
- Examples of verified assessed work.
- Your Programme Leader and assessment team's collective experience.
6.3.3 Dealing with late completion of assignments

Students must have a clear understanding of the centre's policy on completing assignments by the deadlines that you give them. Students may be given authorised extensions for legitimate reasons, such as illness, at the time of submission, in line with your centre policies (see also Section 3.6 “Administrative arrangements for internal assessment”).

For assessment to be fair, it is important that students are all assessed in the same way and that some students are not advantaged by having additional time or the opportunity to learn from others. Centres should develop and publish their own regulations on late submission; and, this should make clear the relationship between late submission and the centre’s mitigating circumstances policy.

Centres may apply a penalty to assignments that are submitted beyond the published deadline. However, if a late submission is accepted, then the assignment should be assessed normally, when it is submitted, using the relevant assessment criteria; with any penalty or cap applied after the assessment. Where the result of assessment may be capped, due to late submission of the assignment, the student should be given an indication of their uncapped grade; in order to recognise the learning that has been achieved, and assessment feedback should be provided in relation to the uncapped achievement.

As with all assessment results, both the uncapped and capped grades should be recorded and ratified by an appropriate assessment board; taking into account any mitigating circumstances that may have been submitted. For assessment to be fair, it is important that students are all assessed in the same way and that some students are not advantaged by having additional time or the opportunity to learn from others. Therefore, it may be advisable that students who do not complete assignments by your planned deadline should not have the opportunity to subsequently resubmit. Centres should develop and publish their own regulations on late submission.

However, if you accept a late completion by a student, then the assignment should be assessed normally when it is submitted, using the relevant assessment criteria.

6.3.4 Issuing assessment decisions and feedback

Once the assessment team has completed the assessment process for an assignment, the outcome is a formal assessment decision. This is recorded formally and reported to students. The information given to the student:

- must show the formal decision and how it has been reached, indicating how or where criteria have been met
- may show why attainment against criteria has not been demonstrated
- must not provide feedback on how to improve evidence but how to improve in the future.
6.3.5 Resubmission opportunity
An assignment provides the final assessment for the relevant Learning Outcomes and is normally a final assessment decision. A student who, for the first assessment opportunity, has failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification shall be expected to undertake a reassessment.

Only one opportunity for reassessment of the unit will be permitted.

Reassessment for coursework, project- or portfolio-based assessments shall normally involve the reworking of the original task.

For examinations, reassessment shall involve completion of a new task.

A student who undertakes a reassessment will have their grade capped at a Pass for that unit.

A student will not be entitled to be reassessed in any component of assessment for which a Pass grade or higher has already been awarded.

6.3.6 Repeat Units
A student who, for the first assessment opportunity and resubmission opportunity, still failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification can:

- be permitted a repeat of a unit (at Centre discretion or with a decision made at Assessment Board)
- study the unit again (with full attendance and payment of the unit fee)
- receive an overall unit grade for a successfully completed repeat unit (but this will be capped at a Pass for that unit)
- repeat a unit once only.

6.3.7 Assessment Boards
Each Centre is expected by Pearson to hold Assessment Boards for all of its BTEC Higher National programmes. The main purpose of an Assessment Board is to make recommendations on:

- the grades achieved by students on the individual units
- extenuating circumstances
- cases of cheating and plagiarism
- progression of students on to the next stage of the programme
- the awards to be made to students
- referrals and deferrals.
Assessment Boards may also monitor academic standards. The main boards are normally held at the end of the session, although if your Centre operates on a semester system there may be (intermediate) boards at the end of the first semester. There may also be separate boards to deal with referrals.

Where a Centre does not currently have such a process then the External Examiner (EE) should discuss this with the Quality Nominee and Programme Leader, stressing the requirement for Assessment Boards by both Pearson and QAA and that Assessment Board reports and minutes provide valuable evidence for QAA’s Review of Higher Education process.

6.4 Planning and record keeping

For internal processes to be effective, an assessment team needs to be well organised and keep effective records. The Centre will also work closely with us so that we can quality assure that national standards are being satisfied. This process gives stakeholders confidence in the assessment approach.

The Programme Leader should have an assessment plan. When producing a plan, the assessment team will wish to consider:

- the time required for training and standardisation of the assessment team
- the time available to undertake teaching and carrying out of assessment, taking account of when students may complete external assessments and when Quality Assurance will take place
- the completion dates for different assignments
- who is acting as IV for each assignment and the date by which the assignment needs to be verified
- setting an approach to sampling assessor decisions though internal verification that covers all assignments, assessors and a range of students
- how to manage the assessment and verification of students’ work so that they can be given formal decisions promptly
- how resubmission opportunities can be scheduled.

The Programme Leader will also maintain records of assessment undertaken. The key records are:

- verification of assignment briefs
- student authentication declarations
- assessor decisions on assignments, with feedback given to students
- verification of assessment decisions.

Examples of records and further information are available in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com).
6.5 Calculation of the final qualification grade

6.5.1 Conditions for the award

Conditions for the award of the HND
To achieve a Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma qualification a student must have:
- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 5
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 5
- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

Conditions for the award of the HNC
To achieve a Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate qualification a student must have:
- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

6.5.2 Compensation provisions

Compensation provisions for the HND
Students can still be awarded an HND if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15-credit units completed at level 4, and similarly if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15-credit units at level 5. However, they must complete and pass the remaining units for an HNC or HND as per the unit rules of combination of the required qualification.

Compensation provisions for the HNC
Students can still be awarded an HNC if they have not achieved a Pass in one of the 15-credit units completed, but have completed and passed the remaining units.

6.5.3 Calculation of the overall qualification grade

The calculation of the overall qualification grade is based on the student’s performance in all units. Students are awarded a Pass, Merit or Distinction qualification grade, using the points gained through all 120 credits, at Level 4 for the HNC or Level 5 for the HND, based on unit achievement. The overall qualification grade is calculated in the same way for the HNC and for the HND.

All units in valid combination must have been attempted for each qualification. The conditions of award and the compensation provisions will apply as outlined above. All 120 credits count in calculating the grade (at each level, as applicable).
The overall qualification grade for the HND will be calculated based on student performance in Level 5 units only.

Units that have been attempted but not achieved, and subsequently granted compensation, will appear as ‘Unclassified’, i.e. a ‘U’ grade, on the student’s Notification of Performance, that is issued with the student certificate.

### Points per credit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Point boundaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Point boundaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>420-599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>600-839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>840+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.5.4 Modelled student outcomes

**Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Grade point</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td>540</td>
<td></td>
<td>690</td>
<td></td>
<td>870</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Grade point</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Unit points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 7</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 7</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>720</td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td>810</td>
<td></td>
<td>570</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Opt = Optional
7 Quality assurance

Pearson’s Quality Assurance system for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes is benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 on the Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). This will ensure that Centres have effective Quality Assurance processes to review programme delivery. It will also ensure that the outcomes of assessment are to national standards.

The Quality Assurance process for Centres offering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes comprise five key components:

1. the approval process
2. monitoring of internal Centre systems
3. independent assessment review
4. annual programme monitoring report (APMR)
5. annual student survey.

7.1 The approval process

Centres new to the delivery of Pearson programmes will be required to seek approval initially through the existing Centre approval process and then through the programme approval process. Programme approval for new Centres can be considered in one of two ways:

- desk-based approval review
- review and approval visit to the Centre.

Prior to approval being given, Centres will be required to submit evidence to demonstrate that they:

- have the human and physical resources required for effective delivery and assessment
- understand the implications for independent assessment and agree to abide by these
- have a robust internal assessment system supported by ‘fit-for-purpose’ assessment documentation
- have a system to internally verify assessment decisions to ensure standardised assessment decisions are made across all assessors and sites.

Applications for approval must be supported by the Head of the Centre (Principal or Chief Executive, etc.) and include a declaration that the Centre will operate the programmes strictly, as approved and in line with Pearson requirements.
Centres seeking to renew their programme approval upon expiry of their current approval period may be eligible for the Automatic Approval process, subject to the Centre meeting the eligibility criteria set out by Pearson.

Regardless of the type of Centre, Pearson reserves the right to withdraw either qualification or Centre approval when it deems there is an irreversible breakdown in the Centre's ability either to quality assure its programme delivery or its assessment standards.

7.2 Monitoring of internal centre systems

Centres will be required to demonstrate ongoing fulfilment of the Centre approval criteria over time and across all Higher National programmes. The process that assures this is external examination, which is undertaken by External Examiners. Centres will be given the opportunity to present evidence of the ongoing suitability and deployment of their systems to carry out the required functions. This includes the consistent application of policies affecting student registrations, appeals, effective internal examination and standardisation processes. Where appropriate, Centres may present evidence of their operation within a recognised code of practice, such as that of the QAA for Higher Education. Pearson reserves the right to confirm independently that these arrangements are operating to Pearson's standards.

Pearson will affirm, or not, the ongoing effectiveness of such systems. Where system failures are identified, sanctions (appropriate to the nature of the problem) will be applied, in order to assist the Centre in correcting the problem.

7.3 Independent assessment review

The internal assessment outcomes reached for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 of the QAA’s FHEQ, are subject to a visit from a Pearson appointed EE. The outcomes of this process will be:

- to confirm that internal assessment is to national standards and allow certification, or
- to make recommendations to improve the quality of assessment outcomes before certification is released, or
- to make recommendations about the Centre’s ability to continue to be approved for the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in question.
7.4 Annual Programme Monitoring Report (APMR)

The APMR is a written annual review form that provides opportunity for centres to analyse and reflect on the most recent teaching year. By working in collaboration with centres, the information can be used by Pearson to further enhance the quality assurance of the Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes.

7.5 Annual student survey

Pearson will conduct an annual survey of Pearson BTEC Higher National students. The purpose of the survey is to enable Pearson to evaluate the student experience as part of the quality assurance process, by engaging with students studying on these programmes.

7.6 Centre and qualification approval

As part of the approval process, your Centre must make sure that the resource requirements listed below are in place before offering the qualification.

Centres must have appropriate physical resources (for example equipment, IT, learning materials, teaching rooms) to support the delivery and assessment of the qualifications.

- Staff involved in the assessment process must have relevant expertise and/or occupational experience.
- There must be systems in place to ensure continuing professional development for staff delivering the qualification.
- Centres must have in place appropriate Health and Safety policies relating to the use of equipment by staff and students.
- Centres must deliver the qualification in accordance with current equality legislation.
- Centres should refer to the individual unit descriptors to check for any specific resources required.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

7.7 Continuing quality assurance and standards verification

We produce annually the latest version of the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com). It contains detailed guidance on the quality processes required to underpin robust assessment and internal verification.
The key principles of Quality Assurance are that:

- a Centre delivering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes must be an approved Centre, and must have approval for the programmes or groups of programmes that it is delivering
- the Centre agrees, as part of gaining approval, to abide by specific terms and conditions around the effective delivery and Quality Assurance of assessment; it must abide by these conditions throughout the period of delivery
- Pearson makes available to approved Centres a range of materials and opportunities through the assessment checking service. This is intended to exemplify the processes required for effective assessment and provide examples of effective standards. Approved Centres must use the materials and services to ensure that all staff delivering BTEC qualifications keep up to date with the guidance on assessment.
- an approved Centre must follow agreed protocols for standardisation of assessors and verifiers, for the planning, monitoring and recording of assessment processes, and for dealing with special circumstances, appeals and malpractice.
- The approach of quality-assured assessment is through a partnership between an approved Centre and Pearson. We will make sure that each Centre follows best practice and employs appropriate technology to support quality-assurance processes where practicable. We work to support Centres and seek to make sure that our quality-assurance processes do not place undue bureaucratic processes on Centres. We monitor and support Centres in the effective operation of assessment and Quality Assurance.

The methods we use to do this for BTEC Higher Nationals include:

- making sure that all Centres complete appropriate declarations at the time of approval
- undertaking approval visits to Centres
- making sure that Centres have effective teams of assessors and verifiers who are trained to undertake assessment
- assessment sampling and verification through requested samples of assessments, completed assessed student work and associated documentation
- an overarching review and assessment of a Centre's strategy for assessing and quality-assuring its BTEC programmes.

An approved Centre must make certification claims only when authorised by us and strictly in accordance with requirements for reporting. Centres that do not fully address and maintain rigorous approaches to Quality Assurance cannot seek certification for individual programmes or for all BTEC Higher National qualifications. Centres that do not comply with remedial action plans may have their approval to deliver qualifications removed.
8 Recognition of Prior Learning and attainment

Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) is a method of assessment (leading to the award of credit) that considers whether students can demonstrate that they can meet the assessment requirements for a unit through knowledge, understanding or skills they already possess, and so do not need to develop through a course of learning.

Pearson encourages Centres to recognise students' previous achievements and experiences whether at work, home or at leisure, as well as in the classroom. RPL provides a route for the recognition of the achievements resulting from continuous learning. RPL enables recognition of achievement from a range of activities using any valid assessment methodology. Provided that the assessment requirements of a given unit or qualification have been met, the use of RPL is acceptable for accrediting a unit, units or a whole qualification. Evidence of learning must be valid and reliable.

For full guidance on RPL please refer to the Recognition of Prior Learning policy document available in the support section of our website (https://qualifications.pearson.com).

QCF Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts unit content mapped to the Level 4 units available in the RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National in Performing Arts can be found in Appendix 6 of this programme specification.
9 Equality and diversity

Equality and fairness are central to our work. The design of these qualifications embeds consideration of equality and diversity as set out in the qualification regulators’ General Conditions of Recognition. Promoting equality and diversity involves treating everyone with equal dignity and worth while also raising aspirations and supporting achievement for people with diverse requirements, entitlements and backgrounds. An inclusive environment for learning anticipates the varied requirements of students, and aims to ensure that all students have equal access to educational opportunities. Equality of opportunity involves enabling access for people who have differing individual requirements as well as eliminating arbitrary and unnecessary barriers to learning. In addition, students with and without disabilities are offered learning opportunities that are equally accessible to them by means of inclusive qualification design.

Pearson’s equality policy requires all students to have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments. It also requires our qualifications to be designed and awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic
- all students achieve the recognition they deserve from undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Pearson’s policy regarding access to its qualifications is that:

- they should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards
- they should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression
- there should be equal opportunities for all those wishing to access the qualifications.
Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National qualifications with integrity. This will include ensuring that applicants have appropriate information and advice about the qualifications, and that the qualification will meet their needs. Centres will need to review the entry profile of qualifications and/or experience held by applicants, considering whether this profile shows an ability to progress to a higher-level qualification. Centres should take appropriate steps to assess each applicant’s potential and make a professional judgement about their ability to successfully complete the programme of study and achieve the qualification. This assessment will need to take account of the support available to the student within the Centre during their programme of study and any specific support that might be necessary to allow the student to access the assessment for the qualification. Centres should consult our policy documents on students with particular requirements.

**Access to qualifications for students with disabilities or specific needs**

Students taking a qualification may be assessed in a recognised regional sign language, where it is permitted for the purpose of reasonable adjustments. Further information on access arrangements can be found in the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ) document Access Arrangements, Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration for General and Vocational Qualifications. Details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are given in the document *Pearson Supplementary Guidance for Reasonable Adjustment and Special Consideration in Vocational Internally Assessed Units*. See the support section of our website for both documents (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).
10 Higher Nationals Performing Arts Units
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-set)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1834</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit type</td>
<td>Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The performing arts industry is a complex network of specialist disciplines that cross over into each other in an ever-evolving creative workplace. Understanding how this industry works, from individual and collaborative working to looking after participants’ own health and wellbeing, is essential for anyone wanting to be employed in performing arts.

This unit develops students’ awareness of key areas of working in performing arts and allows for exploration and research in all matters related to surviving and thriving within the performing arts industry. Employability, self-maintenance, managing finances and the increasing importance of online and offline marketing are all areas that will be covered throughout this unit.

The pressure of working in a performing arts environment and the associated risks are discussed through exploring health, safety and wellbeing, and students will be encouraged to explore their own personal development in the context of wellbeing.

By the end of this unit, students will have a clear understanding of how the performing arts industry works and the steps that are required to access employment opportunities. Students will also have developed their understanding of health and wellbeing within the performing arts environment.

*Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.*
**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the importance of health, safety and wellbeing when working within the performing arts industry
2. Explain the roles and responsibilities within the performing arts industry
3. Investigate the range and accessibility of employment opportunities that relate to your specialist area
4. Investigate how to market and develop a career as a performing arts professional.
Essential Content

LO1 Describe the importance of health, safety and wellbeing when working within the performing arts

Health and wellbeing:
Mental health
Eating disorders
Stamina
Fitness
Nutrition
Hydration
Injury prevention and management
Associations and organisations
Workload
Life/work balance
Health and Safety:
Legislation
Risk assessment
First aid
Legal responsibilities
Associations and organisations

LO2 Explain the roles and responsibilities within the performing arts industry

The performing arts workforce:
Ethnic diversity, relevant associations and organisations worldwide and regional variances.
Areas, e.g. recruitment, pre-production, production, front of house (FOH) and business, the casting process and education
Roles, e.g. agents, producer, director, sound design, lighting design, costume design, hair and make-up design, set design, composer, author/writer, choreographer, performers, musicians, musical director, stage management, technicians (sound, lighting, etc.), wardrobe, crew, ushers, marketing, finance and merchandise
LO3  **Investigate the range and accessibility of employment opportunities that relate to your specialist area**

*Contracts:*
Self-employed
PAYE
Contract length
Legal rights
Clauses and commitments
Work permits

*Finance:*
Financial planning and management
National Insurance
Tax
Working abroad

*Job interviews:*
Auditions – closed calls, open calls, interview
Portfolio creation and requirements (physical and digital)

*Marketing:*
Offline and online activities
Development of technology in relation to accessing employment and Promotional opportunities

LO4  **Investigate how to market and develop a career as a performing arts professional**

*Agents:*
Auditions
Accessibility
Open/closed calls
How to get an agent
Marketing:
Promotion
Offline and online activities
Social media
Show reels
Photographs
Portfolios

CV:
Purpose of CV e.g. relevant and appropriate information

Networking:
Auditions
Organisations
Key contacts
Impact of online activities through social media and technology skills required
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the importance of health, safety and wellbeing when working within the performing arts</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Define health, safety and wellbeing in the context of a performing arts career</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse own health and wellbeing strategies relevant to own specialist area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the risks associated with sustaining health and wellbeing in a career in a performing arts environment</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Develop strategies to maintain a healthy working lifestyle in your chosen career path</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain the roles and responsibilities within the performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the roles and responsibilities within the wider performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse the diversity of the performing arts workforce and areas for development specific to own specialist area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Define the roles and responsibilities in your own specific area of the performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Compare the difference in roles and responsibilities for a chosen role in your pathway, in the film/TV industry and theatre/live performance industry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Investigate the range and accessibility of employment opportunities that relate to your specialist area</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explore the differences between employment and self-employment in the performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong> <strong>D3</strong> Analyse the impact technology has had on employment accessibility within the performing arts industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Discuss the accessibility of employment opportunities within your chosen career path</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Compare the legal rights and responsibilities for both employment and self-employment in your chosen role</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Investigate how to market a career as a performing arts professional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explore marketing activities used in the performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Assess the strengths and weaknesses of using social media as a tool for marketing compared to traditional marketing methods, specific to your performing arts career pathway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.artsprofessional.co.uk Arts Professional
Home page
General reference

www.thestage.co.uk The Stage
Home page
General reference

www.variety.com Variety
Home page
General reference

www.worldtheatremap.org World Theatre Map
Home page
General reference

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*.
Unit 2: Professional Development

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/1835</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit type</td>
<td>Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The landscape of the performing arts industry has changed dramatically over recent years and technology has influenced the way we both produce and consume art. While this has presented many challenges, it has also created new opportunities. However, the emphasis on staying up to date with the industry and continually updating skills is imperative for employability in this challenging industry.

For employment in the performing arts industry to be successful and sustainable, today's professional is often versatile and enterprising, maintaining a portfolio career in which they are able to fully exploit their complete range of skills. Knowledge of your professional strengths and identity is the first step towards building a strategy that will inform your route towards professionalism.

In this unit, you will explore the many potential avenues of employment that relate to your specialism, build an awareness of how to present yourself to the market place and embark on a journey of professional development.

On completion of this unit, students will have made decisions around their vocation and demonstrated the level of autonomy needed for success in the creative industry.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the skills required for employment in your chosen area of specialism within the performing arts industry
2. Design a personal professional development strategy that will outline targets for proactive skills development
3. Undertake the personal development plan over an agreed time frame
4. Evaluate own continuing professional development in line with wider commercial awareness of industry trends and the employment market.
Essential Content

LO1 Assess the skills required for employment in your chosen area of specialism within the performing arts industry

*Overview of generic employability skills:*
- Communication
- Confidence
- Discipline
- Time management
- Motivation
- Team working
- Resilience and independence
- Technical skills relevant to chosen discipline

*Emerging opportunities:*
- Keeping up to date with industry development
- Development of technology
- Emerging practices
- LO2 Design a personal professional development strategy that will outline targets for proactive skills development

*Professional attributes*

*Career aims and objectives*

*Skills audits:*
- E.g. communication
- Communication
- Confidence
- Discipline
- Time management
- Motivation
- Team working
- Resilience and independence
- Technical skills relevant to chosen discipline
Goal and target setting:
SMART targets and time management

Marketing skill development:
Online and offline activities technology skills
LO3 Undertake the personal development plan over an agreed time frame

Time management skills:
Working to targets
Managing workload
Health safety and wellbeing in context of chosen discipline
Reflective practice

LO4 Evaluate own continuing professional development in line with wider commercial awareness of industry trends and the employment market

Industry developments:
Political, legal and cultural
Technology
Artistic
Commercial
Globalisation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess the skills required for employment in your chosen area of specialism within the performing arts industry</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Compare commercial and artistic factors to identify sustainable employment development needs specific to career goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Review skills required for employment in your chosen discipline or specialism</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explore the progression routes that lead to employment opportunities that relate to your discipline or specialism</td>
<td><strong>LO2, LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Compare own skill set with industry requirements for your chosen career pathway</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse your employability opportunities based on your professional development plan in relation to developments in the areas of the industry that relate to your specialism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Design a personal professional development strategy that will outline targets for proactive skills development</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify the key professional attributes that relate to your specialism</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explore experiential activity that will address the development of relevant professional attributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Illustrate short-, medium- and long-term career targets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake the personal development plan over an agreed time frame</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Carry out personal development plan over an agreed timescale</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate skill development in chosen discipline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Illustrate your development through the creation of a log/diary/journal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate own continuing professional development in line with wider commercial awareness of industry trends and the employment market</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate your skill set to identify development in identified target areas</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the importance of commercial awareness and industry trends, specific to your area of specialism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Assess industry trends in the areas of the industry that relate employment in your specialist area</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites
- www.artsprofessional.co.uk (Arts Professional, Home page, General reference)
- www.thestage.co.uk (The Stage, Home page, General reference)
- www.variety.com (Variety, Home page, General reference)
- www.worldtheatremap.org (World Theatre Map, Home page, General reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry.*
Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/616/1836</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Jazz, as a dance genre, has developed greatly over the years and, as such, forms the basis for many musical theatre dance styles and pop videos as well as providing a technical base for classes.

There have been many innovators and creators of their own styles during the development of the genre, and this unit aims to enable students to develop their ability in the studio as a jazz dancer and broaden their contextual knowledge, which will, in turn, inform style and performance. An emphasis is placed on the quality of the work produced, and the ability to self-correct through knowledge and understanding of jazz technique.

Students will also learn to combine steps, which will result in the ability to pick up choreographic combinations.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in set and unset combinations, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry. Students will also have a broader knowledge of the development of jazz as a dance genre.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for jazz as a dance genre
2. Perform the techniques and vocabulary with musicality and artistry
3. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
4. Discuss the development of jazz as a dance genre.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for jazz as a dance genre

Techniques and vocabulary:
A safe warm-up and cool down
Accurate placing and alignment
Core strengthening work and flexibility work
Pliés and tendus (footwork)
Jazz ports de bras and adage
Isolations
Contractions
Travelling steps using a low centre of gravity
Turns – minimum requirement - clean single turn to each side
Corner work e.g. kicks, walks, leaps
Choreographic sequences

LO2 Perform the techniques and vocabulary with musicality and artistry

Technique:
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Using visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combining all of the above skills to create a technical base

Musicality:
Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpretation of different types of music to enhance performance
Counting rhythm, considering dynamics, off beats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography
Artistry:
Interpretation of performance, either given by the choreographer/teacher or students own ideas
Exploration and application of appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Creating engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO3 Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills

Feedback:
Exploration of what feedback is and how to extract information for personal use from general feedback/correction
Identification of how to process feedback by analysing all feedback given to see what resonates for you
Application of personal processing of given feedback in order to maximise the effect on technique
Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.

LO4 Discuss the development of jazz as a dance genre

Historical influences:
African-American vernacular dance late 1800s to the mid-1900s
The music of New Orleans in the early 1900s
The Jazz Age
Modern jazz dance of the 1950s
Film and stage musicals, MTV and pop videos
Influencers:
Katherine Dunham
Jack Cole
Lester Horton
Gene Kelly
Bob Fosse
Gus Giordano
Matt Mattox
Jerome Robbins
Michael Kidd
Michael Jackson
Madonna
Luigi
Michael Bennett
Mia Michael
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for jazz as a dance genre</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore relevant technique, as required within a class environment</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Perform unseen choreography with confidence and embodied knowledge of the required technique and vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required work with the class with assurance</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Illustrate relevant vocabulary, as required, within a class environment</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen choreography with little direction and practice time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Perform techniques and vocabulary with musicality, dynamics, and artistry which demonstrates secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret required content and vocabulary in performance and with artistry</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing all work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music, which complements performance, adding dynamics to the required rhythm</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply the required technique to all technical and choreographic work</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Perform all work with secure technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Demonstrate that feedback is retained after direction</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Evidence the application of feedback, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate all required technical skills with evidence of retention of feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Investigate the development of jazz as a dance genre</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse how your research has influenced own development within the genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Communicate how this has informed own dance development</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Explore the development of jazz as a dance genre, with detailed references to key innovators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 7: Tap 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 4: Ballet 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1837</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Ballet is a key dance skill which develops core strength, co-ordination, line, placement and flexibility along with the requisite artistry and musicality.

This unit has been designed to allow technical and artistic development in the dance studio and to encourage the independent investigation of different approaches to ballet technique. Students will develop an understanding of how these different approaches may or may not assist them within their personal facility, physicality and prior experience.

Students will learn to combine vocabulary, which will result in the ability to pick up enchaînements. In addition, students will be required to investigate different approaches to ballet which inform technique and style, reflecting on how they may or may not be accessible or useful, depending on personal factors such as facility, physicality and prior experience.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations and enchaînements, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry. Students will also have a broader knowledge of different approaches to ballet and be able to reflect constructively on how these approaches may or may not be appropriate or useful to them.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for ballet as a genre
2. Perform the required content and vocabulary with technique, musicality and artistry
3. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
4. Explain the technical requirements of ballet within different approaches and how they apply to own practice.
Essential content

**LO1** Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for ballet as a genre

*At the barre:*

Pliés – demi and grand pliés in first, second and third position, incorporating rises and balances

Tendus – en croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere, closing in plié and/or en fondu – from first, third or fifth position

Glisses – en croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere – from first, third or fifth position

Rond des jambes – en dehors and en dedans à terre, incorporating ports de bras and balances in fifth, retire on the flat foot and on one leg

Battement fondu – à terre, en croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere – from third or fifth position

Grand battement – en croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere

Développés – en croix

Stretch – ballet-related stretching exercises for all areas of the body

*In the centre:*

Ports de bras – including forward and sideways ports de bras, chassés and pas de bourrées, first, second, third, fourth, fourth crossed and fifth and first, second and third arabesque positions of the arms

Adage – développé devant and à la seconde, first, second and third arabesque en l’air, utilising chassés, glissades, pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements

Pirouettes – single pirouette from fifth or fourth position to right and left, chaîné turns to left and right

Petit allegro – échappé sauté, sautés in first, soubresauts, changements, glissades over, under, devant and derrière

Allegro – assemble, jeté devant and derrière, sissone over and under, utilising chassés, glissades, and pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements

Grand allegro – jeté en avant, pose temps, levé in first, second or third arabesque, utilising chassés, glissades, runs, pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements
LO2  **Perform the required content and vocabulary with technique, musicality and artistry**

*Technique:*
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Using visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combining all the above skills to create a technical base

*Musicality:*
Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpretation of different types of music to enhance performance
Counting rhythm, considering dynamics, off beats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography

*Artistry:*
Interpretation of performance, either given by the choreographer/teacher or own ideas
Exploration and application of appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Creating engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO3  **Interpret feedback as directed in lessons to enhance technical skills**

*Exploration:*
What feedback is
How to extract information for personal use from general feedback/correction
Identification of how to process feedback by analysing everything given to see what resonates
Application of your personal processing of given feedback in order to maximise the effect on your technique
Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.
LO4 **Explain the technical requirements of ballet within different approaches and how they apply to own practice**

*Technical requirements of ballet:*
Investigation in order to enhance understanding and inform the approach when learning ballet.
Learn about how the body works within ballet, both within a studio (in ballet class) and classroom setting, using practice, observation of others and research via online resources, books and DVD.

*Application to own practice:*
Explore different ways of presenting and communicating research outcomes by reading, watching and practising to establish how to submit work.
Health and wellbeing within the ballet industry. Mental health, resilience, stamina and a healthy mind and body.
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the techniques and vocabulary required for ballet as a genre</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary within class with assurance</td>
<td><strong>LO1 and LO2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore relevant technique, as required work within a class environment</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with little direction and practice time</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Perform all work with musicality, dynamics, rhythm and artistry, demonstrating secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with direction and practice time</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with direction and practice time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Perform the required content and vocabulary with technique, musicality and artistry</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing enchaînements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret required content and vocabulary in performance musically and with artistry</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements performance, adding dynamics to the required rhythm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply the required technique to all enchaînements</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing enchaînements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Evidence the application of feedback as directed</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate all required technical skills with evidence of retention of feedback and self-reflection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the technical requirements of ballet within different approaches and how they apply to own practice</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explore the technique involved in ballet</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse two different approaches to ballet technique and how they influence your own work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Assess how these techniques apply to your own current experience, physicality and facility</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Assess how these techniques apply to your own current experience, physicality and facility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO5</strong> Analyse two different approaches to ballet technique and how they influence your own work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.ballet.org.uk Ballet Home page General reference
www.rosinaandrews.co.uk Rosin Andrews Home page General reference

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 7: Tap 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/1838</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The roots of contemporary dance can be traced back to the experimental Denishawn school of the 1910s in Los Angeles, the maverick choreography of Martha Graham and the revolutionary ‘space and spine’ approach of Merce Cunningham, yet it endures as a constantly evolving, vital art form, where anything goes, everything can be tried and the possibilities seem endless. The demands on today’s contemporary dancer are greater than ever before, and a need for robust training even more appropriate. Dancers in Matthew Bourne’s groundbreaking company perform eight shows a week for months on end. More and more, contemporary dancers will also perform in music videos and on tour with music acts in addition to a teaching schedule, professional development, a personal fitness regime in the shape of pilates, weight training and/or yoga.

The aim of this unit is to give students a grounding in contemporary dance technique, achieving greater control over their creativity, agency to grow as unique artists, improving the quality of movement and strengthening of their bodies through dance combinations, the learning of modern dance language, contemporary dance technique and to develop a stronger relationship to musicality and creativity.

Topics included in this unit are: the development of modern dance techniques; examination of movement quality; development of musicality and creativity; development of the unique artist voice; measuring dance ability using combinations of contemporary dance language; and the presenting of a project regarding current contemporary dance culture.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use the required contemporary dance language to develop and maintain a sound technical foundation to use in the professional world of dance. They will be able to pick up and retain combinations of the required technique. An approach to research and delivery of said research will also be covered.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons
2. Demonstrate required dance language for the genre
3. Perform the required dance language with technique and musicality
4. Explain the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to technique and artistry.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons

The role of contemporary dance technique:
Overview of various techniques and schools of thought, e.g. Graham, Cunningham, Limon, Horton, Release, or a hybrid of any or all of these core approaches

Implementation of contemporary dance technique:
Graham-based floor routine, pleadings, contractions, pitches and turns, triplets and jumping
Cunningham-based spinal twists, back stretches, tendu combinations, curve work, adage, triplets
Horton-based across-the-floor combinations, layouts, leaps
Release-based intuition work as well as, in general, turns, jumps, leg work, extensions, falls, floor work, back bends

LO2 Demonstrate the required dance language for the genre

Identify contemporary dance language:
Gestures, terminology, new line, core approaches

Implementation of contemporary dance combinations:
Floor work, centre work, adage, jumps, leaps, corner and travelling work

Overview of contemporary dance-making:
How it’s done and who does it

LO3 Perform the required dance language with technique and musicality

The role of performance in contemporary dance:
What it means and how it is different to other genres
How creativity becomes intrinsic when dancing
Implementation of technique, musicality and creativity:
Sound
String technique
Innate and intimate relationship with music
Unique expression through an individual style of creativity when dancing

Overview of the unique artist voice:
The importance of a unique approach within the field of contemporary dance while maintaining sound technique

Consider expression within the use of contemporary dance performance:
How to find one's own style, an individual stance

LO4 Explain the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to technique and artistry.

Identify elements of the current contemporary dance scene:
Who is setting trends and ‘political and cultural climate’
Emerging styles of dance

Determining requirements of current trends within the industry:
Funding implications
New approaches to rehearsing

Consideration of technique and artistry within the current contemporary dance scene:
How important technique remains within contemporary dance, examples of when it isn’t as important, e.g. anti-dance, the diversity within the contemporary dance scene currently and how this informs artistry

Workforce:
Diversity of historical and current workforce
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required work within a class environment with assurance</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate required technical skills and evidence of retained feedback during lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore relevant technique, as directed within a class environment</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate the required dance language for the genre and embodied knowledge</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate the required dance language with confidence and an embodied knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Demonstrate the application of feedback, as directed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate the required dance language for the genre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Illustrate relevant vocabulary, as required, within a class environment</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate the required dance language for the genre and embodied knowledge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform with innate musicality and creativity, underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Perform the required dance language with technique and musicality</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Perform the required dance language with technique and creativity</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the contemporary dance industry and how it has evolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Perform the required dance language with technique and musicality</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements performance, adding dynamics to the required rhythm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Apply the required technique to all combinations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to own technique and artistry</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Review a wide range of approaches to contemporary dance technique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explore the current evolution of contemporary dance</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Explore how they may influence your own development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Assess how this relates to your technique and artistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


DVDs


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 3: Jazz 1
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 7: Tap 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>D/616/1839</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Commercial dance is an ever-evolving dance genre, with new styles and dance moves appearing all the time.

There have been many innovators and creators of their own styles during the development of the genre, mostly influenced by music, and this unit aims to enable students to develop their ability in the studio as a dancer and their contextual knowledge which will, in turn, inform style and performance.

While studying this unit, students will participate in regular commercial classes in order to develop the skills listed below along with the knowledge of the required content and how to execute it. Students will also learn to combine steps, which will result in the ability to pick up choreographic combinations. In addition, students will investigate the history and development of commercial as a dance genre in order to enhance knowledge and understanding.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations and enchaînements, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry. Students will also have a broader knowledge of the evolution and development of commercial dance.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary for the unit
2. Perform the required vocabulary with technique and style
3. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
4. Explain the evolution and development of commercial dance.
Essential Content

LO1 **Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary for the unit**

*Content:*
Core strengthening work
Basic technique with accurate placing and alignment within all styles
The physicality needed to dance with sharpness and fluidity as required
Using jazz and other dance techniques within commercial dance
Choreographic sequences

*Vocabulary:*
For a safe warm-up and cool-down
The movement vocabulary used within in commercial dance, e.g. isolations, contractions and co-ordination

LO2 **Perform the required vocabulary with technique and style**

*Technique:*
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Using visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combining all the above skills to create a technical base

*Musicality:*
Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpretation of different types of music to enhance performance
Using aural skills to hear the beats and dynamics used by the choreographer
Counting rhythm, considering dynamics, offbeats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography
Artistry:
Interpretation of performance, either given by the choreographer/teacher or own ideas
Exploration and application of appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Creating engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO3 Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills

Exploration:
What feedback is
How to extract information for personal use from general feedback/correction
Identification of how to process feedback by analysing everything given to see what resonates
Application of personal processing of given feedback in order to maximise the effect on technique
Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.

LO4 Explain the evolution and development of commercial dance

The evolution of pop videos and MTV
Evidence of the elements of current commercial dance in old movies

Styles and innovators:
Break dancing
Street dance
Hip-hop music and dance
BBoys
Arlene Phillips
Michael Jackson
Beyoncé

Workforce:
Diversity of historical and current workforce
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO1 and LO2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate the required</td>
<td></td>
<td>D1 Perform all work with innate style, musicality,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content and vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
<td>dynamics, rhythm and artistry, which is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the unit</td>
<td></td>
<td>underpinned by secure and consistent technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>M1 Demonstrate all required work</td>
<td>D2 Demonstrate all required technical skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate all required</td>
<td>within a class environment with</td>
<td>and perform with evidence of retention of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work within the class</td>
<td>assurance</td>
<td>feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>M2 Perform unseen choreography with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform unseen choreography</td>
<td>little direction and practice time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with direction and practice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform the required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocabulary with technique</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and style</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>M3 Demonstrate a relationship with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpret all required</td>
<td>the music which complements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work musically and with</td>
<td>performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>M4 Demonstrate secure technique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform the required</td>
<td>when performing work, as directed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technique to all technical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and choreographic work,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as directed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpret feedback, as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directed in lessons, to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enhance technical skills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>M5 Demonstrate that feedback is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate the application</td>
<td>retained after direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of feedback as directed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>M6 Demonstrate all work with secure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate the application</td>
<td>technique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of all required technical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain the evolution and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>development of commercial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>M7 Explore the development of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigate the evolution</td>
<td>commercial dance as a genre, with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and development of</td>
<td>detailed references to key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commercial as a dance</td>
<td>innovators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communicate how this has</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>informed own dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>development</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
- dancelessons.net
  - Dance Lessons
  - The History of Hip-hop Dance
  - General reference

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 3: Jazz 1*
*Unit 4: Ballet 1*
*Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1*
*Unit 7: Tap 1*
*Unit 8: American Tap*
*Unit 9: Choreography 1*
*Unit 11: Dance for Camera.*
Unit 7: Tap 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1840</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Tap is a skill that requires rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance. Although the core vocabulary is small, the combinations and rhythms you can create are infinite. Styles vary across countries, with many countries boasting that they were the originators of tap dance as we know it today.

This unit has been designed to allow technical and artistic development in the dance studio alongside the acquisition of basic vocabulary in various combinations and to encourage the independent investigation of different tap practitioners and their influence on the genre as it is today.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations, incorporating and demonstrating rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance. Students will also have a broader knowledge of different tap practitioners and how they have influenced the genre as it stands today.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit
2. Perform the required vocabulary with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance
3. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
4. Discuss tap practitioners who have influenced the genre as it stands today.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit

All steps of one sound:
Tap
Step
Stamp
Drop
Hop
Spring
Dig
Beat
Touch
Stomp
Brush
Scuff

Combination steps of two sounds:
E.g. Shuffle (to the front side and back)
Step heel
Tap step
Flap
Pick up (from standing pick up change and pick up on one foot)
Two-beat riff
Ball change

Three-beat shuffles:
Time steps – single, double and triple shuffle time steps and break
Pull backs on the flat foot or on the balls of the feet depending on ability
Basic wings on two feet
Paddles (also known as paradiddles) – four beat
Four beat cramp rolls and cramp rolls changing with a turn
Four and five beat riffs
Single and double waltz steps
Basic progressive tap

**LO2 Perform the required vocabulary with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance**

**Technique:**
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Developing visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Developing aural skills to replicate sounds and tone
Creating the correct posture to allow the relaxed looking stance of the genre without loss of the necessary control
Mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combining all the above skills to create a technical base

**Musicality:**
Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpretation of different types of music to enhance performance
Counting rhythm, considering dynamics, off beats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography

**Artistry:**
Interpretation of performance, either given by the choreographer/teacher or own ideas
Exploration and application of appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Creating engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair
LO3  **Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills**

_Exploration:_

What feedback is
How to extract information for personal use from general feedback/correction
Identification of how to process feedback by analysing everything given to see what resonates
Application of personal processing of given feedback in order to maximise the effect on technique
Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.

LO4  **Discuss tap practitioners who have influenced the genre as it stands today**

_Innovators:_
Fred Astaire  
Gene Kelly  
Savion Glover  
Michael Flatley  
Ann Miller  
Gregory Hines  
Donald O’ Connor  
Dein Perry

_Workforce:_
Diversity of historical and current workforce
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary within a class environment with assurance</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Perform with an embodied knowledge of the required vocabulary and an innate musicality and artistry, which is underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate required vocabulary within the class environment</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen combinations with little direction/repetition and time to practise</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Demonstrate all required technical skills and evidence of retention of feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen combinations with direction/repetition and time to practise</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements the rhythm and dynamics of the required vocabulary</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate all required technical skills and evidence of retention of feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Perform the required vocabulary with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing combinations</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explore the historical development of tap as a dance genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret required vocabulary rhythmically, dynamically and with artistry</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evidence that feedback is retained after direction</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Investigate practitioners who have influenced the genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply the required technique to all combinations</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Assess the development of differing styles within the genre of tap, using case studies of influential practitioners</td>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Discuss tap practitioners who have influenced the genre as it stands today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Illustrate the application of feedback, as directed</td>
<td><strong>LO5</strong> Analyse the diversity of influential tap practitioners and relevant barriers that impacted on the development of tap as a genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td><strong>LO6</strong> Assess the development of differing techniques within the genre of tap, using case studies of influential practitioners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Discuss tap practitioners who have influenced the genre as it stands today</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explore the historical development of tap as a dance genre</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Investigate practitioners who have influenced the genre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 3: Jazz 1
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 8: American Tap

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/1841</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

American Tap differs from that taught in the UK and, as such, has its own vocabulary and feel. While many steps are familiar to both countries, many of the same steps have different names and it is important to be able to distinguish them when working with different choreographers.

This unit has been designed to develop American Tap style and technique while also enhancing knowledge of the history of the genre and great American Tap dancers. Students will learn to combine vocabulary which will result in the ability to pick up and perform combinations.

Students will learn to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations, incorporating and demonstrating rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance. Students will also develop a broader knowledge of different American Tap practitioners and how they have influenced the genre as it stands today.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit
2. Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance
3. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
4. Discuss the history of American Tap and its innovators.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit

*All steps of one sound that contribute to more complex sounds:*

Spank
Brush
Slam
Chug
Clunk
Dig
Toe
Toe tip
Toe stand
Heel
Slide
Step
Heel stand
Jump
Smack
Leap
Jump click
Hop
Spring
Touch
Scuff
Stamp
Trenches
Stomp
All steps of two sounds that contribute to more complex sounds:

Slap
Dig toe
Flap
Shuffle
Riff
Over-the-top
Scuffle
Basic wings
Pick-ups
Step heel
Paddle
Camp rolls
Paradiddle
Bombershay
Maxie Ford
Grab-off
Buffalo
Pullback
Complex riffs and rolls
Complex scuffles
Shirley Temple
Time steps
Waltz Clog
LO2  **Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance**

**Technique:**
- Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
- Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
- Developing visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
- Developing aural skills to replicate sounds and tone
- Creating the correct posture to allow the relaxed looking stance of the genre without loss of the necessary control
- Mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
- Combining all the above skills to create a technical base

**Musicality:**
- Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
- Interpretation of different types of music to enhance performance
- Counting rhythm, considering dynamics, off beats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography

**Artistry:**
- Interpretation of performance, either given by the choreographer/teacher or own ideas
- Exploration and application of appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
- Creating engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO3 Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
**Exploration**
What feedback is
How to extract information for personal use from general feedback/correction
Identification of how to process feedback by analysing everything given to see what resonates
Application of personal processing of given feedback in order to maximise the effect on your technique
Mental stamina and resilience in relation to feedback and critiques.

**LO4 Discuss the history of American Tap and its innovators**

*Investigate the history and development of American Tap as a dance genre:*

*Genre:*
- Gumboot dance
- Irish/American
- Soft-shoe shuffle
- Folk dance
- Clog

*Innovative dancers:*
- Fred Astaire
- Gene Kelly
- Gregory Hines
- Donald O'Connor
- Ann Miller
- Savion Glover
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the unit</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary within the class environment</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Perform unseen combinations with confidence, demonstrating an embodied knowledge of the required vocabulary and the ability to pick up work at speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen combinations with direction/repetition and time to practise</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary within a class with assurance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Perform with innate musicality and artistry which is underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen combinations with little direction/repetition and time to practise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements the rhythm and dynamics of the required vocabulary</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing combinations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate a range of American Tap practitioners have influenced the genre, including their body of work and their style</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate required technical skills with evidence of retention of feedback and self-reflection and correction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret and perform all required vocabulary rhythmically, dynamically and with artistic flare</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Perform with innate musicality and artistry which is underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply the required technique to all combinations</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements the rhythm and dynamics of the required vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing combinations</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Evidence the application of feedback as directed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evidence that feedback is retained after direction</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Apply and retain all required technical skills</td>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Investigate the history of American Tap</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Justify how a range of American Tap practitioners have influenced the genre, including their body of work and their style</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse how a diverse range of innovative tap practitioners have influenced the genre as it stands today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explore how American Tap dancers have influenced the genre as it stands today</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 3: Jazz 1*
*Unit 4: Ballet 1*
*Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1*
*Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1*
*Unit 7: Tap 1*
*Unit 8: Choreography 1*
*Unit 11: Dance for Camera.*
Unit 9: Choreography 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>D/616/1842</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Choreography is the backbone of dance: without it there would be no groundbreaking dance companies, no big numbers in musical theatre and movies, no iconic dance trends in pop videos. It is the essence of taking technique, pairing it with human beings and using it to create a vital pathway of non-verbal communication. Spiritual, powerful, humorous, uplifting, dynamic, sensual, and anything else you imagine it to be.

The aim of this unit is to give students an overview of choreography, establishing an understanding of what goes into dance making. They will also explore the history of movement as an art form, how to construct an original piece of choreography, how to measure one’s own skill as a choreographer and develop an understanding of choreography as a chosen career pathway.

Topics included in this unit are: the development of choreographic approaches, examination of movement making, development of musicality and creativity, development of the unique choreographic language, measuring dance ability using combinations of contemporary vocabulary, the creation of a dance piece, where all learned skills thus far can be utilised. An approach to research and delivery of said research will also be covered, leading to the presentation of a project detailing career paths in choreography.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to apply the required choreographic skills to develop and maintain a sound stylistic foundation to use in the professional world of movement making. They will be able to improvise ideas and set original combinations of the required choreographic skills. Students will develop other skills such as leadership, communication, improvisation, research, reasoning and interpretation, recall, adaptation, which are all critical for gaining employment.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate required choreographic skills as directed in lessons
2. Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre
3. Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and required vocabulary for the genre
4. Explain the career trajectory in choreography and how this relates to artistry and creativity.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate required choreographic skills as directed in lessons

The role of choreography in the current dance industry:
Overview of various approaches and schools of thought
Diversity of choreographers

Exploration of skills required to effectively choreograph:
originality, concepts and idea creation, leadership, communication.
Implementation of choreographic skills
An effective warm-up based on genre specific to style

LO2 Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre

Identify choreographic vocabulary:
Creation of dance combinations
Overview of choreographic styles

LO3 Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and required vocabulary for the genre

The role of performance in choreography:
Implementation of creation, style, staging, musicality and originality
Consider unique expression within the use of choreography

LO4 Explain the career trajectory in choreography and how this relates to artistry and creativity

The business of choreography – copyright and ownership or moves and works.
Research and deliver a presentation on choreography as a career:
Be able to provide research
Acknowledge role of feedback and evaluation within a career trajectory
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate required choreographic skills as directed in lessons</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate required choreographic skills as retained in lessons</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate required choreographic skills as retained in lessons and with evidence of originality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate required choreographic skills as directed in lessons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre with quality of movement</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre with confidence and an embodied knowledge of the required vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary for the genre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and required vocabulary for the genre</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills with intuition and quality of movement</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills with innate originality and creativity, underpinned by mature and consistent steps throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and required vocabulary for the genre as directed in lessons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the career trajectory in choreography and how this relates to artistry and creativity</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain the career trajectory in choreography in any chosen genre, how this relates to artistry and creativity, demonstrating a deeper knowledge of dance industry business</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the career trajectory in choreography in any chosen genre, how this relates to artistry and creativity, demonstrating an entrepreneurial dimension in the knowledge of dance industry business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the career trajectory in choreography in any chosen genre and how this relates to artistry and creativity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

[www.etonline.com](http://www.etonline.com) ET Online
EXCLUSIVE: ‘La La Land’ Choreographer Mandy Moore answers: What does a choreographer really do?
Video

[www.huffingtonpost.com](http://www.huffingtonpost.com) Huffington Post
Q&A: Rob Marshall on directing, creative influences and finding his own editorial perspective
Article

[Youtube.com](http://www.youtube.com) YouTube
Bob Fosse choreography – “The Rich Man’s Frug”
Video

[Youtube.com](http://www.youtube.com) YouTube
Video

[Youtube.com](http://www.youtube.com) YouTube
A Chorus Line 1976 Tony Awards
Video
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 7: Tap 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>H/616/1843</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

The aim of this unit is to give students a grounding in the history of their specialist area, so that they may achieve a greater knowledge of their roots. Through the academic study of their chosen genre, they will also develop presentation and dissemination skills, refine their artist’s voice, gain confidence and retain important historical information to use throughout their careers.

Topics included in this unit are: the development of relevant techniques peculiar to their chosen genre, the crossover of genres, the development of research skills, the development of the unique artist voice, measuring academic ability using written word projects, and the presentation of a project focusing on the history of the genre specific to the chosen study pathway.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to disseminate and relate information relating to the history of their chosen specialist area and develop their presentation skills as a result. Students will develop other skills such as writing, presenting, studying, recall, differentiation, discernment, cataloguing and indexing, all of which are crucial in today’s digital world and are transferable skills which cross over into any other career pathway.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the history of chosen specialism
2. Explore the crossover element between the chosen specialism and other specialist areas
3. Demonstrate the development of chosen specialism
4. Assess how the historical development of chosen specialist area could impact on own career development.
Essential Content

LO1 Describe the history of chosen specialism

One of the following broader specialist areas would include: Dance, Acting, Musical Theatre, Technical Arts

Within this, students must select a specialism, relevant to their own chosen career goals, which could be:

Dance: a variety of genres, choreographers, practitioners
Acting: a variety of acting methods, practitioners
Technical Arts: Light, Sound, Set, Costume, Make up, Hair etc, innovations, technology

The historical development of the specialist area to include:
Context: Social and Political development, milestones
Diversity: Historical and current workforce
Technology: Impact on development
Current trends and advances.

LO2 Explore the crossover element between the chosen specialism and other specialist areas

Exploration of wider impact on the Performing Arts industry:
Key milestones on the development – style/genre development, influence of a practitioner, technological impact and/or influence, development of equipment

Examples could include:
New technology and its impact on productions
Creation of Performance Art
Development of Immersive Theatre
MTV and the impact on choreography
Impact on own specialist development
LO3 **Demonstrate the development of chosen specialism**

*Define key developments and interactions of specialist area within the Performing Arts Industry*

LO4 **Assess how the historical development of chosen specialist area could impact on own career development**

*Personal skills development:*

Staying up to date with industry trends and development, future-proofing employment skills, growth and impact of technology

Current trends, movements, technological advances and potential impact on employment in specialist area

Consideration of a resurgence of skills eg. traditional wig making, analogue productions.
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the history of a chosen specialism</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Define a chosen specialist area within your chosen career pathway</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the development of the chosen area and its impact on the area in the current creative arts Industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore the crossover element between the chosen specialism and other specialist areas</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Assess how your chosen specialist area interacts with other specialist areas in the wider creative arts context</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate how the impact of the interaction may evolve and develop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate the development of chosen specialism</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the development of chosen specialist area and how this development has influenced current productions</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong> <strong>D3</strong> Evaluate how the development of chosen specialist area influences own career goals and skill development needs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Assess how the historical development of chosen specialist area could impact on own career development</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Justify the interaction between chosen specialist area and the wider creative arts industry</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate the impact of chosen specialist area on the wider creative Arts context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Assess how the historical development of chosen specialist area could influence own career development</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse the importance of tracking industry developments for own career progression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 32: Creative Research Project.
Unit 11: Dance for Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1844</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Filming of any sort requires specific shots which are then edited together to create the final product. This would be the case, for example, when filming a pop promo, a film sequence or a commercial or television programme.

This unit has been designed to enable students to explore how dance is shot for screen and the different platforms which engage with dance on camera. It will give students the opportunity to analyse different films, commercials, television programmes and pop promos in order to gain an understanding of how they were created. Research of the technical requirements of film-making will inform students in the creation of their own filmed dance sequence.

On successful completion of this unit, students will have a better understanding of how dance may be filmed in a range of settings and what is required in order to create a filmed dance sequence.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess a range of filmed dance sequences
2. Review the choreographic considerations when performing to camera
3. Rehearse a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre
4. Perform a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre.
**Essential Content**

**LO1 Assess a range of filmed dance sequences**


* A wide and diverse range of genres/styles used in filmed dances sequences, to include: Ballet, Tap, Jazz, Contemporary, American Tap and Commercial Dance

* Development and growth of dance for film from 1894 to present day

**LO2 Review the choreographic considerations when performing to camera**

* Choreography for a wide and diverse range of genres/styles used in filmed dances sequences, to include: Ballet, Tap, Jazz, Contemporary, American Tap and Commercial Dance

* Choreography for a wide and diverse range of filmed dance sequences in a range of settings including film, commercial, games, television and music video

* Choreographic considerations for context - working to a brief, audience, intentions, output

**LO3 Rehearse a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre**

* Develop aims and objectives

* Work with a director and working to a brief

* Work with a choreographer – choreographic intentions

* Develop camera awareness and focal point, camera angles, movement adjustments, spatial awareness, communication

* Develop dance technique appropriate to genre

* Time management – rehearsal process
LO4  **Perform a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre**

*Meet aims and objectives of director's brief*

*Communication of choreographic intentions*

*Performance relevant to context: spatial awareness, performance to camera, communicating with a camera (if appropriate)*

*Applying dance technique relevant to genre*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess a range of filmed dance sequences</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO1 and LO2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify a range of dance sequences produced specifically for camera</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse a diverse range of filmed dance sequences</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse a diverse range of filmed dance sequences, providing evidence of how the genre, choreography and intended audience, influenced the final product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Compare a range of filmed dance sequences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Review the choreographic considerations when performing to camera</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse the success of choreographic decisions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore the choreography of a range of filmed dance sequences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Assess choreographic decisions based on intended audience reaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Rehearse a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Rehearse a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate effective working to camera techniques, as directed, in rehearsal</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate effective communication of choreographic intentions through technical skills and audience engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate choreographic intentions through rehearsal process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Perform a dance sequence for camera in any dance genre</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate effective working to camera techniques, as directed, in performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Demonstrate choreographic intentions in performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DVD

Websites

dancefilms.org

Dance Film
Dance on Camera
General reference

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 3: Jazz 1*
*Unit 4: Ballet 1*
*Unit 5: Contemporary 1*
*Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1*
*Unit 7: Tap 1*
*Unit 9: Choreography 1.*
Unit 12: Singing 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>M/616/1845</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit is designed to produce independent vocal practitioners who have the knowledge and skills to fulfil their full potential as a singer and the versatility to meet the wide-ranging vocal demands of the musical theatre industry. Students will acquire a detailed physical understanding of the workings of the vocal mechanism and the technique and awareness required to achieve vocal performances of the highest possible standard. By the end of the unit students will learn how to produce a more confident and tonally secure sound by developing their musical ear.

Students will learn a range of exercises and songs through which they will explore the fundamentals of good vocal production. The abdominal release required for effective singing is fundamentally opposed to the abdominal core strength required for the dance units. Students will be encouraged to understand that they must develop the ability to master both requirements. As the student progresses through the unit, new exercises to further develop the fundamentals of good vocal production will be introduced.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to warm up and prepare their voices for performance effectively and safely, be able to demonstrate basic breathing techniques and effective breath control, understand the mechanisms of voice production and perform using the appropriate techniques.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the ability to warm up the voice safely and effectively
2. Explain the anatomy and physiology of the voice
3. Apply basic techniques of breathing and breath control in singing to produce a consistent and healthy sound
4. Perform with vocal resonance, flexibility and clear diction.
Essential Content

LO1  **Demonstrate the ability to warm up the voice safely and effectively**

*Posture:*
Developing good posture for singing
Position of the feet
Knees
Hips
Abdomen
Chest
Shoulders
Arms
Neck and head

*Releasing unwanted tension particularly in the neck jaw and tongue*
*Creating a clear sound*
*Accessing vocal registers and controlling the access*
*Developing flexibility – vocal range, register access, dynamics, diction*
*Improving intonation and the ability to pitch intervals precisely*

LO2  **Explain the anatomy and physiology of the voice**

*Anatomy of the voice:*
Mechanisms
Functions
Actions and roles
Voice production and control

*Vocal Health:*
Identify vocal problems
How to resolve them through exercises and health strategies
When to seek professional advice
Hydration
Healthy eating
Vocal exercise for vocal health
Vocal stress
Environmental effects

LO3 **Apply basic techniques of breathing and breath control in singing to produce a consistent and healthy sound**

*Tutors should select vocal repertoire relevant to students abilities and range, standards and to demonstrate relevant techniques in class*

*The difference types of breathing and their purpose*

*Application of breathing techniques – purpose of technique, appropriate to material, vocal range, lyrical relevance/emotional content, vocal registers, dynamics*

LO4 **Perform with vocal resonance, flexibility and clear diction**

*Tutors should select vocal repertoire relevant to students abilities and range, standards and to demonstrate relevant techniques through performance*

*Application of breathing techniques in performance*

*Vocal placement and understanding the role of the vocal resonators (the chest, the larynx, the pharynx, the oral cavity and the nasal cavity)*

*Healthy projection using muscle engagement, mouth shape and space, and the position of the jaw and tongue to amplify sound*

*Employ techniques to achieve clear diction while maintaining good projection, considering the impact of vowel sounds, diphthongs and consonants*

*Introduce vocal colour through the use of dynamics and phrasing without compromising projection and audibility*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the ability to warm up the voice safely and effectively</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate, through technical exercises, the ability to access all available registers smoothly, with control, accurate pitch and clear tone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate good posture, devoid of tension, for the production of a clear and healthy sound, through technical exercises</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate, through technical exercises, the ability to pitch cleanly accurately and consistently</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Produce a completely clear tone and accurate pitch, through technical exercises</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain the anatomy and physiology of the voice</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate how the anatomy and physiology of the voice can produce a healthy, controlled, and versatile sound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore the anatomy and physiology of the voice and how this relates to a healthy vocal sound</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explain how the voice mechanisms action vocal production and the associated risks to vocal health</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore the potential physical impact on the voice if an incorrect vocal technique is regularly used</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply basic techniques of breathing and breath control in singing to produce a consistent and healthy sound</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate consistent and effective breath control through the delivery of a selection of songs, as directed, which produces a healthy vocal sound with high-powered vocal qualities throughout</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate appropriate breathing techniques to ensure controlled breath release</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate consistent breath control through the delivery of a selection of songs, as directed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Apply appropriate breathing techniques to produce a consistent vocal sound</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform with vocal resonance, flexibility and clear diction</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Perform a range of songs, as directed, demonstrating flexibility, clear diction, vocal resonance and effective dynamic and phrasing choices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Project vocal sound, consistently in a healthy and controlled way through performance</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Demonstrate vocal resonance, flexibility and clear diction consistently through the performance of a range of songs, as directed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Demonstrate good diction when singing a melodic line</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Demonstrate vocal flexibility through performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.britishvoiceassociation.org.uk The British Voice Association
Voice care
Research

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism
Unit 15: Ensemble Singing
Unit 16: Vocal Repertoire
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 43: Singing 2
Unit 45: Immersive Theatre
Unit 46: Auditioning.
Unit 13: Acting 1

Unit code | T/616/1846
---|---
Unit level | 4
Credit value | 15

Introduction

There is no one defined process which provides a ready manual to be followed to develop a student’s acting skills. The aim of the unit is to introduce students to accepted principles of acting technique. Students will explore and develop technical and interpretive skills required to perform in a range of performance contexts and as such provide a foundation for future development which, as their understanding of the acting process and themselves develops, they can shape to suit their own needs.

There are a range of accepted acting techniques and systems which should be explored through training as an actor. Topics included in this unit are preparation for performance, analysis of text, rehearsal and performance technique.

On successful completion of this unit, students will understand key principles of the acting process, rehearsal methods including how to develop a character as well as an appreciation of the complexity and challenge of creating truthful performances.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Apply key acting principles to the creation of a performance
2. Apply analysis and interpretation to realising a text
3. Develop material for performance by employing rehearsal techniques
4. Perform rehearsed material, demonstrating application of relevant technique.
Essential Content

LO1 Apply key acting principles to the creation of a performance

*Developing the creative state:*
- Relaxation
- Concentration
- Imagination
- Preparation
- Naivety

*Explore and develop key techniques such as:*
- Objective/task
- Superobjective/supertask
- Action
- Problem/obstacle
- Given circumstances
- Units/bits
- Reality of doing
- Emotional memory
- Magic if
- Communication
- Tempo-rhythm
- Method of physical action
- Active analysis

*Develop and use of imagination and self to improve acting facility and skills*

*Develop first person present tense acting technique*

*Explore a wide range of practitioners such as Stanislavsky, Chekhov, Meisner, and Adler*

*Health and wellbeing while developing a role.*
LO2 **Apply analysis and interpretation to realising a text**

*Research and exploration of text: explore a range of approaches to analysing text*

*Deconstructing the text:*

Breaking down play into acts and scenes

Units/bits

Titling acts

Scenes

Units/bits

*Interpretation of character:*

Methods for analysing character

Character decisions

Playing choices

*Analysis of key characteristics of text such as:*

Theme

Context

Subject matter

Inciting incident

Major dramatic question

Rising action

Reversals

Crisis

Climax

Denouement

*Background world of the text: application of relevant technique to explore and create world of play*
LO3 Develop material for performance by employing rehearsal techniques

Explore a wide range of rehearsal processes/methodologies:
E.g. Stanislavsky – early and late phase processes
Stafford-Clark
Alfreds
Mitchell

Employ defined rehearsal strategies to realise performance text building on techniques explored in the development phase

Exploration of acting choices and ability to work with others and accept and build on ideas to develop material for performance.

Develop character through observation, background research, and identification.

Standard character development exercises: e.g. Archetypes, tension states, centres, psychological gesture, status

Employ relevant skills to embody character such as vocal characterisation, movement qualities, gesture, proxemics, physicality and psychological insight

Personal management to include time management, health and safety, co-operation, preparation, communication and discipline

Working with others – listening and responding, taking direction, interacting collegially, accepting and building creative ideas

Developing material: experimentation, risk, spontaneity, reflection, sense of play/fun.

LO4 Perform rehearsed material, demonstrating application of relevant technique

Emotional and psychological engagement demonstrating embodiment of character

Sustain role during performance:
Concentration
Focus
Interpretation
Relationships with other characters

Present a considered interpretation of role:
Interpreting and analysing role
Working with director to define interpretation
Express character through:
Posture
Gesture
Dynamics
Tempo-rhythm
Vocal dexterity

Sustain a role employing concentration, discipline, and tempo-rhythm

Channel performance energy with belief and focus

Work with confidence employing appropriate techniques to realise performance fully
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Apply key acting principles to the creation of a performance</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify key principles of acting</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate skilful application of key principles of acting in developing skills for a performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Apply key principles with a sound level of understanding and skill</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Apply key principles of acting effectively in developing skills for a performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Apply analysis and interpretation to realising a text</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse a selection of texts to prepare for performance</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse key features of the text, recognising the creative possibilities in relation to the presentation of character and the production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Interpret the key features of a selection texts to prepare for performance</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Identify key features of text, demonstrating sound understanding of the possibilities in relation to the presentation of character and the production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Develop material for performance by employing rehearsal techniques</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explore material for performance using a variety of relevant techniques</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Apply a full range of rehearsal techniques perceptively to make creative choices in fully realising the potential of the text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Apply selected rehearsal techniques to prepare for performance</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply a range of rehearsal techniques effectively in making creative choices to fulfil the text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform rehearsed material, demonstrating application of relevant technique</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Apply rehearsed techniques to realise a chosen text and role in a performance situation</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Perform rehearsed material with exemplary skill and technique in realising the role and the text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Perform rehearsed material, demonstrating sound application of technique to realise the role and the text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism*
*Unit 17: Acting for Camera*
*Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors*
*Unit 19: Movement for Actors*
*Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 42: Physical Theatre*
*Unit 44: Acting 2*
*Unit 45: Immersive Theatre*
*Unit 46: Auditioning*
*Unit 48: Classical Acting*
*Unit 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2*
*Unit 51: Dance for Actors*
*Unit 63: Working in Creative Education.*
Unit 14: Musical Theatre History in Practice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>A/616/1847</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The evolution of musical theatre occurred in the period from the 1930s to the present day. It is important, therefore, to consider the work of different periods in relation to the social context of the time.

This unit is designed to provide students with an overview of musical theatre history, covering musical theatre genres, practitioners (creatives and performers) and seminal works. The work of different composers, librettists, directors, choreographers and actors will also be introduced and the role of each discussed. In addition to this, students will explore different musical theatre genres.

The unit will equip students with research and study skills appropriate at Level 4, learning to extract, analyse and criticise information from primary and secondary sources. Students will be given research tasks related to the set topics. During these tasks, they will communicate what they have discovered through the creation of a number of written and practical pieces in a variety of styles. These could include programme notes, book and show reviews, research articles and biographies, presentations and performed excerpts. Students will present their ideas to an audience of their peers and will critically assess their own work and the work of their peers.

On completion of this unit, students will have developed the ability to reflect on, analyse and criticise the work they do in class and rehearsal.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the development of musical theatre from the 1930s to the present day
2. Analyse a musical theatre work, identifying its principal elements and setting it in historical context
3. Prepare material from a chosen musical theatre work that demonstrates the principal elements identified
4. Perform musical theatre material to an audience, as directed.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Describe the development of musical theatre from the 1930s to the present day

*A historical framework:*
  - Works from each decade, identifying cultural norms, audience expectations and other influences
  - Musical theatre genres most closely associated with particular decades
  - Musical theatre works, performers, composers, writers, and choreographers associated with each genre
  - Trends and turning points in the development of musical theatre
  - Cultural developments in musical theatre across the world.

**LO2** Analyse a musical theatre work, identifying its principal elements and setting it in historical context

*Define musical theatre genres:*
  - Identify distinguishing characteristics

*Define principal elements:*
  - Musical and choreographic motifs, plot devices, and structural elements, from a wide and diverse range of musical theatre

  *How composers and librettists make use of musical effects, characters, and form to convey their message*

  *Influence on musical theatre of wider cultural trends (and vice versa)*

**LO3** Prepare material from a chosen musical theatre work that demonstrates the principal elements identified

*Define principal elements:*
  - E.g. Musical and choreographic motifs
  - Plot devices
  - Structural elements

  Giving examples from particular works of musical theatre
LO4 **Perform musical theatre material to an audience, as directed**

*Communication:* Vocal skills (tone, articulation, inflection, projection) Working in a team, audience awareness and interpretation, working with a director, communication of ideas and concepts, confidence and clarity

*Physicality:* Spatial awareness, characterisation, gesture, musicality through physicality, confidence and strength,

*Musicality:* Pitch, tone, rhythm, intonation, varied forms (solo, duet, group etc) harmonisation, use of dynamics, confidence and clarity

*Interpretation:* communicating subject and theme of text, characterisation – vocal, physical and psychological, stylistic features of text, working a director and others, audience awareness.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the development of musical theatre from the 1930s to the present day</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe key works, practitioners, and genres</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Explore the development of musical theatre history, relating trends in the development of musical theatre to societal change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explain the differences between genres and between key works</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the trends in the development of musical theatre</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Compare the differences between the development of musical theatre in Britain and in the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Explore the development of musical theatre history, relating trends in the development of musical theatre to societal change</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse a musical theatre work, identifying its principal elements and setting it in historical context</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate how the use of principal elements and techniques changed during the evolution of musical theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Assess which principal elements are commonly found in musical theatre works of each genre</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Illustrate the use of each principal element in musical theatre works</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explore composers/librettists who use relevant techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Assess the identified principal elements throughout the rehearsal process, demonstrating valid contributions to the development of the material, in preparation for performance</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Assess the identified principal elements throughout the rehearsal process, demonstrating valid contributions to the development of the material, in preparation for performance</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate an analysis of the material through considered contribution to the rehearsal process that results in a performance that effectively communicates intentions</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Select material from chosen musical theatre work that demonstrates the principal elements identified</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Develop material selected for performance evidencing effective communication skills during the rehearsal process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform the prepared musical theatre material to an audience, as directed</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Perform selected musical theatre material evidencing effective communication of principal elements, as directed</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Perform musical theatre material that demonstrates an effective combination of all the principal elements, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Demonstrate effective transition of material from rehearsal to performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.americantheatrewing.org American Theatre Wing
Theatre legends
General reference

www.musicals101.com Musical Theatre 101
Home page
General reference

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism*

*Unit 12: Singing 1*

*Unit 15: Ensemble Singing*

*Unit 16: Vocal Repertoire.*
Unit 15: Ensemble Singing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1848</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The aim of the unit is to develop the skills required to be an effective member of an ensemble, performers need to develop their ability to sing, in both unison and harmony, within that ensemble. They need to acquaint themselves with the key principles of a music rehearsal, such as how to learn, record and practise harmony lines, musical listening skills, understanding the relationship between the cast and the musical director, rehearsal etiquette and procedures, and the disciplines of ensemble singing, including unity of phrasing, dynamics, accent and diction, harmony work, blending, and sight singing.

Students will acquire an understanding of the relationship between notes and develop their understanding of relative pitch. Students will build an awareness of what is happening around them while they are singing. Specific skills to be taught include the singing of major scales and arpeggios, listening to, and the accurate reproduction of, melodic lines, singing a capella, copying and identifying metre and rhythm, and developing internal timekeeping. Students will be taught basic aural skills and the ability to recognise and sing musical intervals. They will acquire knowledge of the rudiments of music notation and score reading (to include recognising simple Italian music terms and symbols, repeats, codas, bar numbers and rehearsal markings) and to learn to sing simple and more complex melodies at sight.

In addition to singing new musical material (learned aurally or by sight-reading), students will be expected to include characterisation, storytelling, and retain an appropriate sense of style and an understanding of the genre of the piece.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Perform a given musical line with rhythmic accuracy, both in unison and in harmony sections
2. Perform a given musical line with melodic accuracy, both in unison and in harmony sections
3. Rehearse a musical score as part of an ensemble
4. Demonstrate performance skills that incorporate characterisation and acting choices as part of an ensemble.
Essential Content

LO1 Perform a given musical line with rhythmic accuracy both in unison and in harmony sections

Learn how to recognise different time signatures and understand how they affect the metre and emphasis
Be able to maintain a given tempo, both in homophonic and polyphonic settings

LO2 Perform a given musical line with melodic accuracy both in unison and in harmony sections

Sing and sustain a melodic line while others sing a completely different line
Develop the ability to identify and sing any diatonic interval above or below a given note
Develop the ability to sing a previously unknown melody line at sight

LO3 Rehearse a musical score as part of an ensemble

Develop the ability to maintain concentration and focus for the duration of the rehearsal
Be able to follow direction and instructions, e.g. responding to and maintaining corrections
Understand how to follow cues, both in the music and also from the musical director
Develop a basic understanding of musical notation, e.g. converting music to the most suitable key through online transposition tools
Follow an unfamiliar score easily and accurately
Mark rehearsal directions in a score and mark up a score so that an audition pianist will understand the singer's requirements (cuts; repeated sections, tempo changes, dynamics)
Create a personal practice schedule that includes acting on corrections
Transfer the technical skills acquired in the Singing unit to performance in this unit
Develop an awareness of the other components in a piece and how each part fits together, e.g. considering blend
LO4  **Demonstrate performance skills that incorporate characterisation and acting choices as part of an ensemble**

*Realise tempo, dynamic and articulation markings*

*Create light and shade through the use of expressive phrasing*

*Explore the song-journey of a piece and how it fits in to the wider context of the musical*

*Explore and convey the meaning of the lyrics*

*Identify the mood of the music and how this connects to the text and sub-text of the lyric*

*Communicate a character and his/her emotions and intentions through vocal and physical choices*

*Develop clear and truthful relationships with other characters in the ensemble*

**Key contacts**

**Impact of online activities through social media and technology skills required**
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcome</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Perform a given musical line with rhythmic accuracy, both in unison and in harmony sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Demonstrate a range of time signatures in simple time accurately</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Demonstrate a range of time signatures in compound time accurately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Perform a musical line with rhythmic accuracy in unison</td>
<td>M2</td>
<td>Perform a musical line with rhythmic accuracy in two-part counterpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Perform a given musical line with melodic accuracy, both in unison and in harmony sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>Identify any diatonic interval above or below a given note</td>
<td>M3</td>
<td>Sing any diatonic interval above or below a given note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Perform a musical line with melodic accuracy in unison</td>
<td>M4</td>
<td>Perform a musical line with melodic accuracy in two-part counterpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Rehearse a musical score as part of an ensemble</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>Interpret and respond to direction</td>
<td>M5</td>
<td>Annotate a score with rehearsal directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Interpret an unfamiliar score</td>
<td>M6</td>
<td>Demonstrate musical notation skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate performance skills that incorporate characterisation and acting choices as part of an ensemble</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P7</td>
<td>Apply performance markings, including tempo, dynamics, and articulation to a performance</td>
<td>M7</td>
<td>Identify the mood of the music and how this impacts on the lyric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P8</td>
<td>Communicate lyrical content through performance</td>
<td>M8</td>
<td>Communicate character and emotional and intentions through vocal and physical choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO5</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
- [www.earbeater.com](http://www.earbeater.com) Ear Beater
  EarBeater Classic
  Training
- [Musicmind.org](http://Musicmind.org) Musical Mind – melody ear training/
  interval ear training
  Training
- [www.musictheory.net](http://www.musictheory.net) Music Theory
  Exercises
  Training
- [www.teoria.com](http://www.teoria.com) Teoria
  Exercises
  Training
- [www.trainer.thetamusic.com](http://www.trainer.thetamusic.com) Theta Music
  Training

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 12: Singing 1*
*Unit 43: Singing 2.*
Unit 16: Vocal Repertoire

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/1849</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The aim of the unit is for students to understand and be able to perform the various forms and contrasting styles of songs required in today’s professional musical theatre, and to acquire a well-rounded portfolio of audition songs.

Students will study a number of eras and composers and explore the styles and techniques required by the musical theatre canon. The unit will begin with the key composers of the 1920s and 1930s and progress chronologically. The songs taught will provide some of the material for a professional portfolio of audition songs that students will be required to assemble during the course. They will be encouraged to see the disciplines of singing and acting as symbiotic and should apply this principle at all times when singing in their acting classes.

During the unit, students will be introduced to musical theatre ‘standards’ which are representative of each genre of musical theatre. As students progress through the unit, they will be encouraged to discover and select songs of their own choice that are appropriate for each category in terms of style and genre.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Present a varied and well-balanced portfolio of songs that showcase the strengths of the student's vocal and acting abilities

2. Analyse a musical theatre song and classify its style

3. Apply informed vocal choices for each song, taking into account the use of different voice qualities, styles and resonances appropriate to the genre

4. Apply informed acting choices to each song, taking into account the styles and social/historical context appropriate to the genre.
Essential Content

LO1 **Present a varied and well-balanced portfolio of songs that showcase the strengths of the student's vocal and acting abilities**

*Explore songs and composers from the following periods:*

- Early musical theatre (1925–1943) – the works of Cole Porter, Jerome Kern, Irving Berlin, George Gershwin, Rodgers and Hart and their contemporaries
- Traditional musical theatre – classical (1943–1970) – the works of Rodgers and Hammerstein, Lerner and Loewe, Bock and Harnick, Leonard Bernstein, Lionel Bart and their contemporaries
- Traditional musical theatre – showtunes (1950–present) – the works of Kander and Ebb, Jerry Herman, Frank Loesser, Charles Strouse, Cy Coleman, Jule Styne, Ross and Adler
- Sondheim (1963–present) Sondheim's work is generally considered to be the most complex and varied in the musical theatre canon in respect of acting and vocal demands
- Late-twentieth-century musical theatre (1970–2000s) – the works of Andrew Lloyd Webber, Boublil and Schönberg, Flaherty and Ahrens, Stephen Schwartz, Maltby and Shire, William Finn, Maury Yeston, and their contemporaries
- Family entertainment (1964–present) – the works of the Sherman Brothers, Alan Menken, Randy Newman and their contemporaries, whose work is used extensively in family entertainment environments

LO2 **Analyse a musical theatre song and classify its style**

*Key Components of Musical Theatre*


*Song types eg. patter, dramatic ballad, dramatic uptempo, torch song*

*Structure and principal elements*
**Song Journeys:** winning journey; a losing journey; a spiral journey, or a serendipitous journey

**Author intentions, context and comparison**

**LO3** **Apply informed vocal choices for each song, taking into account the use of different voice qualities, styles and resonances appropriate to the genre**

*Develop the ability to recognise and recreate the primary vocal qualities used in musical theatre (speech quality; cry/sob; twang; opera; falsetto, and belt)*

*Identify the use of each of the vocal qualities and resonances in recorded musical theatre, illustrating their uses, and evaluating their effectiveness in navigating gear changes and most importantly in communicating character and emotion*

*Use knowledge of a character’s objective and whether or not the character succeeds in fulfilling that objective in order to decide on which vocal qualities and resonances to employ*

*Use the understanding of singing technique to influence the choice of vocal qualities and resonances in order to help to navigate difficult passages*

**LO4** **Apply informed acting choices to each song, taking into account the styles and social/historical context appropriate to the genre**

*Place the musical text in its historical context, exploring the: influences; cultural norms; relationship with other art forms; socio-political factors; technological developments, and the status of musical theatre as an art form at the time, and use this information to establish appropriate available acting tools*

*Explore and convey the meaning of the lyrics by considering both the text and the sub-text of the lyrics for the specific song in conjunction with other songs/pieces of dialogue sung/spoken by the same character in the wider work*

*Explore the song-journey and consider the acting choices available to communicate the journey effectively to an audience*

*Identify the mood of the music and how this connects to the text and sub-text of the lyric*

*Communicate a character and his/her emotions and intentions through vocal and physical choices*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Present a varied and well-balanced portfolio of songs that showcase the strengths of the student’s vocal and acting abilities</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Illustrate knowledge of musical theatre songs, shows, and key players</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Describe the full context of chosen material, covering knowledge of the players, contexts and suitability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Assess the suitability of a song for repertoire</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explore a range and depth of knowledge which covers a song from each genre, its provenance, and setting</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Select songs for a range of contexts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse a musical theatre song and classify its style</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify song types, structures and individual elements</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate how to link theory to practice by performing songs from the musical theatre repertoire before and after analysis, and by using rehearsal and performance techniques as tools for analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Interpret the author’s intentions</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Analyse a song by creating a song journey</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse a song by creating a text and subtext chart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply informed vocal choices for each song, taking into account the use of different voice qualities, styles and resonances appropriate to the genre</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Recreate primary vocal qualities/resonances</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate full command of the musical material and can cope with lesser known/challenging pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Convey the character of a song</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Apply technique to negotiate difficult passages</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Evaluate the use of technique in delivering gear changes and communicating emotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Apply informed acting choices to each song, taking into account the styles and social/historical context appropriate to the genre</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain social/historical context</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Portray a character and his/her emotions and intentions convincingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Interpret a song in that context</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Identify the mood of the music and connect this to the text and sub-text</td>
<td><strong>M8</strong> Apply acting choices which are connected to the song-journey and sub-text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites

- www.estillvoice.com
  - The Estill Voice Model – videos
  - Training
- www.musicals101.com
  - Musical Theatre 101
  - General reference
- www.speechlevelsinging.com
  - Speech Level Singing – The SLC Method
  - Research

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 12: Singing 1*
*Unit 14: Musical Theatre History in Practice*
*Unit 43: Singing 2.*
**Unit 17: Acting for Camera**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>A/616/1850</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

A significant area of employment for the actor is working on camera in a variety of domains from film and television to online. Actors need to develop appropriate technique in order to perform successfully in front of a camera. While the technique of performing to camera may be rooted in realistic technique for the stage, it poses challenges of its own.

This unit will foster technical acumen in meeting the practical and artistic demands of realising performance for the screen. Topics included in this unit are understanding the challenges of working on set, developing suitable acting techniques for camera, rehearsing material and performing in front of camera.

On successful completion of this unit, students will have acquired knowledge of the technical challenges of performing to camera, developed appropriate technique to realise effective screen performance, and performed to camera.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the moving image environment
2. Develop acting techniques for performances to a range of screen mediums
3. Apply acting technique to rehearse material for screen performance
4. Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario.
Essential Content

LO1 Assess the moving image environment

Influential screen performers and their acting methodologies

Historical and contemporary screen acting techniques and methodologies

Style/medium/format: to include Thrillers, Noir soap, Blockbuster, Independent, Comedy, Romcom

Key terms, e.g. ADR/looping, aspect ratio, background, boom, call, call sheet, cheating (look, position, movement), clapper board, continuity, coverage, cut, dailies, depth of field, dubbing, eye line, extras, first assembly or rough cut, Foley, hitting a mark, location, marks, matching, pickup, post-production, principal photography, radio mic, reshoot, rolling, second unit, setup, shoot, shooting schedule, shooting script, shot, shot list, slate, speed, take, tracking, wrap

Personnel on a set, e.g. director of photography (DoP), camera operator, focus puller, camera assistant, grip, gaffer, sparks, boom operator, sound recordist, floor manager, first assistant director (AD), second AD, third AD, stunt coordinators, runners, art director, stand-by props, script supervisor, wardrobe, make-up

Production processes peculiar to range of film environments, e.g. script development, funding, screen tests, schedules and calls, Health and Safety

LO2 Develop acting techniques for performances to a range of screen mediums

Experimentation with different methodologies, e.g. Stanislavsky, Meisner, Adler, Leigh:

Exploration of appropriate skills and technique based on exploration of practitioners

Development of vocal, physical and psychological technique for screen performance

Develop understanding of shot size and behaviour: extreme long shot, long shot, medium, medium close-up, close-up, extreme close-up

Acting on and off camera

Technical challenge of blocking and hitting marks

Moment-to-moment acting: listening and responding, playing reactions

Analysis of script: beats/bits/units, objectives/tasks, actions, obstacles, given circumstances, character personality and traits
LO3 **Apply acting techniques to rehearse material for a performance to camera scenario.**

*Realising script:*
Director's vision, taking direction, needs of the script, interpretation, analysis of script, originality of characterisation
Absorbing technical challenges to create a performance – camera angles, shot size, continuity, green screen, acting to nothing
Rehearsing alone to create performance as required
Preparation – script analysis, developing character, learning lines
Blocking rehearsal and hitting marks

*Learning to be in the moment:*
Listening and responding

*Developing the performance:*
Experimenting with choices and taking risks

*Defining and communicating the character:*
Interpretation of role through analysis and realisation of character through behaviour

*Working with other actors:*
Sensitivity
Listening
Responding
Working relations

*Personal management:*
Timekeeping
Preparation
Props
Costumes
Health and Safety
On set rehearsal:
Blocking the scene
Rehearsing the blocking
Showing the scene to the crew
Working out the coverage
Setting up the shot
Camera rehearsal

LO4 Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario

The take:
Technical requirements
Acting in front of the crew
Preparation before the take (focus task emotional state tempo-rhythm)
Continuing until the director calls ‘cut’
Recovering from the take
Take two
Feedback from the director/the director as audience
Maintaining concentration
Between takes

Consistency of performance in performing multiple takes

Creating correct intensity for shot size:
appropriate level of performance vocally, physically and psychologically

Characterising role to meet the needs of the script
Dealing with technical challenges:
Hitting marks
Working with the camera
Using props
Managing eye-lines
Continuity
Crossing the line

Keeping the performance as if for the first time
Working out of sequence
Interaction with other performers, e.g. performing off camera for takes of others
Meeting the needs of the director: responding to direction
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Assess the moving image environment</td>
<td>D1 Analyse the moving image environment, including acting styles, genres and roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Assess the key features of the moving image environment</td>
<td>M1 Explore the diversity of the moving image environment, including acting styles, genres and roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Develop acting techniques for performances to a range of screen mediums</td>
<td>D2 Refine screen acting technique, demonstrating ability to develop skills with a strong and insightful grasp of the artistic and technical challenges of screen performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Identify acting technique for a range of screen mediums</td>
<td>M2 Select technique showing ability to develop effective skills to meet the artistic and technical challenges of acting for screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Develop acting techniques required for performance to a range of screen mediums</td>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply acting techniques to rehearse material for a performance to screen scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Apply relevant screen acting techniques in rehearsal to interpret a role</td>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Apply skills to the performance of a role with application of technique in meeting the technical challenges of the medium</td>
<td><strong>LO5</strong> Apply skills to the performance of a role with proficient application of technique in meeting the technical challenges of the medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Identify acting technique for a range of screen mediums</td>
<td><strong>LO6</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>Develop acting techniques required for performance to a range of screen mediums</td>
<td><strong>LO7</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td>Apply relevant screen acting techniques in rehearsal to interpret a role</td>
<td><strong>LO8</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong></td>
<td>Apply skills to the performance of a role with application of technique in meeting the technical challenges of the medium</td>
<td><strong>LO9</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong></td>
<td>Identify acting technique for a range of screen mediums</td>
<td><strong>LO10</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong></td>
<td>Develop acting techniques required for performance to a range of screen mediums</td>
<td><strong>LO11</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P12</strong></td>
<td>Apply relevant screen acting techniques in rehearsal to interpret a role</td>
<td><strong>LO12</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P13</strong></td>
<td>Apply skills to the performance of a role with application of technique in meeting the technical challenges of the medium</td>
<td><strong>LO13</strong> Effectively apply identified acting skills to a performance-to-camera scenario</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 13: Acting 1*

*Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors*

*Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance*

*Unit 51: Dance for Actors.*
Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1851</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

One of the instruments for communicating the inner life of a character is the voice. As such, the development of the expressive capability of the voice is essential to the actor.

This unit introduces students to the fundamental principles of vocal performance and how sound is formed physiologically. In this way, through the application of technique and exercises, they can develop an expressive and flexible vocal instrument capable of meeting the demands of a variety of material.

Topics included in this unit are physiological sound formation, including the physical process of articulation, vocal health, voice production and vocal delivery. Students will participate in a regime of exercises to improve voice production and will have the opportunity to review and reflect on their performance in order to identify targets for improvement.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to understand the physiological formation of sound and how to develop and improve vocal quality through reflection and application of technique. They will be able to perform while demonstrating an appropriate vocal technique.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the principles of voice production and how sound is formed physiologically
2. Apply technique for voice production to develop voice and speech skills
3. Apply vocal technique to a portfolio of performed material
4. Evaluate effectiveness of vocal delivery and identify areas for improvement.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Demonstrate the principles of voice production and how sound is formed physiologically

*Physiological exploration of the formation of sound including:*
Voice produced in larynx, Vocal folds (false and true),
Vocal folds vibrate to create sound, Breath control/support
Diaphragm fact and fiction, Anchoring

*Creation of vocal tone:*
Control of air exhalation, Vocal cords, Resonance

*Organs and muscles:*
Tongue, Mouth, Palate, Larynx, Vocal folds. Epiglottis
Trachea, Lungs, Ribs, Diaphragm, Intercostal muscles
Spine

*Alignment:*
Head, Neck, Ribcage, Spine, Pelvis

*Breath:*
Posture, Lung capacity, Correct breath pressure, Ribs
Use of diaphragm, Intercostal muscles, Control of tension

*Process of articulation:*
Jaw, Lips, Teeth, Tongue, Hard palate, Soft palate, Throat

**LO2** Apply technique for voice production to develop voice and speech skills

*Identifying vocal problems:*
Appearance – posture, ribcage, asymmetry
Sound – speaking voice clear tone and/or clean fold closure, resonance
History – medication, vocal problems, surgery, previous training, acid reflux,
Head neck or back injuries resulting in alignment problems
Excessive air pressure/control of air exhalation – efficient release of abdominal wall
Tight tongue root
Insufficient or inappropriate body dynamic
Control of tension/ability to isolate
Diction
Use of resonators

Resolution of vocal problems and improvement of vocal skills through an appropriate programme of exercises:
Development of correct alignment and posture through techniques such as Feldenkrais Alexander
Control or isolation of effort to produce clear tone isolating false vocal folds from constricting due to effort (thoracic fixation) working true vocal folds at comfortable level

Control of air flow from vowel to consonant:
True vocal fold contact on vowel and release of/resistance to air for consonant use the lips to build up air pressure before releasing it

Positive and negative practice:
Identifying the false and true folds and alternating between constriction and retraction to feel the space change between insufficient voice use and efficient use of voice or clear tone

Abdominal wall:
Releasing the abdomen to allow diaphragm to function
Resonance exercises
Speech muscles – exercises to strengthen lips tongue palate

Expressivity:
Clarity, Pace, Dynamics, Character, Use of accents

Analysis of text:
Understanding, Interpretation, Vocal choices to convey character
Voice production:
Control of tension/isolation
Correct posture (head neck ribcage spine)
Resonators and tonal range
Formation of vowels and consonants
Projection of voice

Vocal delivery:
Breath, Note, Tone, Dynamics, Pitch, Pace, Timbre, Inflection

LO3 **Apply vocal technique to a portfolio of performed material**

**Material:**
Range of material designed to provide appropriate challenge e.g. Shakespearean sonnets poems political speeches monologues both contemporary and classical

**Performance of material:**
Analysis and interpretation of text
Translation of analysis into vocal performance
Quality of expressive capabilities
Vocal characterisation of text
Communication of text

**Technical:**
Anchoring
Projection
Diction
Control of breath
Pace and timing
Vocal texture
Timbre
Technique to convey meaning:
Modulation of tone
Volume
Clarity
Characterisation
Style
Dynamics
Use of pause
Pitch
Pace

LO4 **Evaluate effectiveness of vocal delivery and identify areas for improvement**

Review and analysis of own vocal performance:
Identifying how well the needs of the text were realised vocally and areas for development

Review of strengths and weaknesses of vocal instrument
Relaxation, Control, Isolation, Clear tone, Alignment/posture
Diction, Vocal characterisation, Pitch, Pace, Resonance
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the principles of voice production and how sound is formed physiologically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify key anatomical structures essential to vocal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the vocal processes of voice production accurately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Apply technique for voice production to develop voice and speech skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify relevant vocal techniques for a vocal development regime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore relevant technique and exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply vocal technique to a portfolio of performed material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Perform material demonstrating vocal technique to fulfil technical requirements of audibility, clarity and communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Perform material using technique to communicate the meaning and purpose of the text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate effectiveness of vocal delivery and identify areas for improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of vocal delivery, identifying areas for improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate the relationship between voice production and physiology with accuracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Apply identified techniques and exercises to develop technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply vocal technique to communicate the meaning and purpose of the text audibly, clearly and with dynamic intent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the relationship between voice production and physiology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Develop a range of exercises that demonstrate the principles of voice production and lead to clear improvement in vocal ability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform an interpretation of a text that demonstrates assured communication through correct vocal technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse strengths and weaknesses of vocal delivery, identifying areas for improvement, with an in-depth understanding and demonstration of appropriate technique to bring about vocal improvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 13: Acting 1*
*Unit 17: Acting for Camera*
*Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance.*
Unit 19: Movement for Actors

Unit code | R/616/1854
---|---
Unit level | 4
Credit value | 15

Introduction

Significant physical demands are placed on the modern performer, whether it be to execute period movement or dance, participate in a fight sequence, perform in a physical theatre piece or to portray the precise physicality of a role.

The aim of this unit is to provide students with an understanding of the importance of developing an expressive body as an essential component of their performance toolkit. Students will acquire foundation skills in suppleness, strength and agility which will facilitate the development of movement capability and physical presence.

Topics included in this unit are identification of strengths and areas for improvement in terms of movement capabilities, exploration of movement methodologies, identifying a programme of exercises to develop somatic skills, and performing movement-based material.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to demonstrate that they understand the strengths and weaknesses of their movement skills, are able to address areas for improvement through a defined programme of exercises, develop material for performance and execute material for performance using appropriate movement skills.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the strengths and weakness of own movement skills
2. Create a programme of exercises to develop movement ability based on assessment of skills
3. Apply movement skills to developing material for performance in rehearsal
4. Apply movement skills in a performance context.
Essential Content

LO1  **Assess the strengths and weaknesses of own movement skills**

*Exploration of current movement levels:*

*Agility, movement range, spatial awareness and dynamics, movement qualities*

*Exploration of physiology of human body*

*Strengths and areas for improvement: action of the body, qualities of movement/dynamics, space/environment, relationship*

LO2  **Create a programme of exercises to develop movement ability based on assessment of skills**

*Explore work of a wide and diverse range of practitioners*

*Research and devise programme of exercises to address strengths and weaknesses*

*Health and safety: warm ups and cool downs, injury prevention, lifestyle choices, diet*

*Exercises: exercises for fitness, strength, stamina and suppleness, movement awareness, release, control of tension, development of movement vocabulary, release of blocks*

*Exercises to address components of movement: bodily action, movement qualities/dynamics, space/environment, relationship*

LO3  **Apply movement skills to developing material for performance in rehearsal**

*Space: use of levels, articulation of space/proxemics, group and individual body shapes*

*Physical: flexibility, co-ordination, posture, expression, gesture, fluency, travelling, timing, use of weight, movement dynamics/effort actions, movement phrasing, states of tension, relaxation, movement vocabulary, movement styles, character movement*

*Exploration of ideas: visual, aural, ideational, text*

*Structuring material: development of ideas, compositional devices*

*Rehearsal: discipline, accepting and developing ideas, creative input*

*Evaluation: evaluation/reflection in action to improve work as part of process, targets for improvement*
LO4 **Apply movement skills in a performance context**

*Skills:*
- Co-ordination
- Alignment action of the body
- Movement qualities/dynamics
- Use of space
- Relationships in space

*Performance:*
- Realise ideas with accuracy
- Timing and phrasing
- Responsiveness to and interaction with other performers
- Communication/interpretation of ideas
- Movement definition and control
- Awareness of semiotics of physical expression
- Use of gesture
- Physical expression of text
- Use of composition

*Individual and group:*
- Trust
- Lifts
- Body language
- Dynamics
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess the strengths and weakness of own movement skills</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Assess movement capability for a range of contexts</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse movement in a diverse range of context and own areas for development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Review strengths and weaknesses in movement skills for a range of contexts</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate movement capability, relevant to a diverse range of contexts, identifying strengths and weaknesses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Create a programme of exercises to develop movement ability based on evaluation of skills</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Create a programme of movement exercises to develop movement skill set for a range of contexts</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Construct a varied programme of exercises which are clearly justified and linked to strengths and weaknesses for a wide range of contexts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Justify a programme of exercises which address accurately the strengths and weaknesses identified</td>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply movement skills to developing material for performance in rehearsal</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate fluent and imaginative application of movement skills in developing assured and creative material for performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply movement skills with assurance in developing material for performance</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate assured and effective application of movement skills to develop creative material for performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Apply movement skills in a performance context</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Apply relevant movement skills in a performance context with assurance and control</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Demonstrate dynamic movement skills in performance with technical accomplishment, sustained creativty and control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate fluent movement skills in performance with skill, flexibility and control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 13: Acting 1
Unit 17: Acting for Camera
Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors
Unit 19: Movement for Actors
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 44: Acting 2
Unit 46: Auditioning
Unit 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2.
Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>D/616/1856</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The concept of a devised performance has been around for many years. However, in the ever-changing and evolving performing arts industry, devising has evolved into a wider collaborative process that the entire creative team can engage in. This could include theatre makers from any discipline – directors, writers, performers, choreographers, composers, designers, technicians, the audience and even the performance space itself. Devised pieces are being increasingly used as an important and effective method of communicating and engaging audiences in contemporary social issues, which is a powerful tool.

Due to the nature of devising, the most effective way of developing ideas and skills in this area is to fully explore a wide and diverse range of practitioners, productions and companies that have helped to shape this form of theatre. This diversity of these areas of study is essential to fully understand the exploratory nature of devising.

By the end of this unit, students will have developed a creative toolbox of methods, ideas, techniques that could all be applied to a devised work. They will also have improved their understanding of the contextual development of devising and its importance in today's creative arts industry. Students will also have explored contemporary devising processes, including use of movement, text and ensemble, and developed their appreciation of the entire creative process and how it informs and links to the final product.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the history of devised theatre and influential practitioners
2. Explore a wide range of techniques and processes used to create a piece of devised work
3. Create and perform a piece of devised work
4. Evaluate the techniques and processes used in the creation and performance of a piece of devised work.
**Essential Content**

**LO1 Explore the history of devised theatre and influential practitioners**

Wide range of practitioners to include: Joan Littlewood, Jerzy Grotowski, Peter Brook, Antonin Artaud, Étienne Decroux, John Wright, Lecoq, Gaulier

Wide range of Theatre Companies to include: Frantic Assembly, Wooster Group, Cornerstone, Sojourn The Living Theatre, Open Theatre, Australian Performing Group, People Show, Teatro Campesino, Théâtre de Complicité, Legs on the Wall, Forced Entertainment, Goat Island, Graeae, DV8, Punchdrunk, Gecko, Kneehigh, 1927, Improbable

Wide range of Theatre styles and forms to include: Naturalism, Expressionism, Symbolism, Realism, Theatre of the Absurd, Classical, Physical Theatre, Mime, Theatre of Cruelty and Commedia dell’Arte, docu-theatre; verbatim, creative adaptation, political theatre/feminist theatre, epic theatre comedy/tragedy/melodrama farce

Different forms of devised performances: Media, Technology, Live Theatre, Art works, genre collaboration

Cultural, Political, Social, and Ecological influences on devised performances

**LO2 Explore a wide range of techniques and processes used to create a piece of devised work**

Stimulus – to include: Image, Music, an event (historical, contemporary, current) text

Commissioning: types of commissions (to include commercial company, charity and museum)

Translation process: stimulus translation and commission translation. Translation process skills: negotiation, exploration, reflective practice, creating a brief and then working to a brief

Audience: demographics, communicating intentions and engagement

Exploration of relevant techniques in practice: Improvisation, Naturalism, Expressionism, Symbolism, Realism, Theatre of the Absurd, Classical, Physical Theatre, Mime, Theatre of Cruelty and Commedia dell’Arte, docu-theatre; verbatim, creative adaptation, political theatre/feminist theatre, epic theatre comedy/tragedy/melodrama farce

Performance space considerations to include: Arena, Thrust, End Stage, Flexible, Environmental, Promenade, Black Box, Studio and Courtyard
LO3  **Create and perform a piece of devised work**

*Application of the following through the creation and performance:*

- Developed techniques
- Developed processes
- Communication with audience through defined and agreed audience aims and objectives
- Utilisation of performance space through defined and agreed objectives
- Effective translation of stimuli

LO4  **Evaluate the techniques and processes used in the creation and performance of a piece of devised work**

*Reflective practice:*

- Analysis of processes and techniques used in their effectiveness as a communication tool
- Analysis of audience engagement: interaction, gathering feedback, meeting aims and objectives
- Analysis of performance space: effective use, meeting defined aims and objectives
- Analysis of use of stimulus: effectiveness of translation, meeting the brief, effectiveness of working to a commission
- Analysis of working within group: communication within a team and effective working
- Analysis of own skill set: areas for development and future skill development
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the history of devised theatre and influential practitioners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss the influence key practitioners have had on the development of devised performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore a wide range of techniques and processes used to create a piece of devised work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore a diverse range of techniques and processes used in the creation of a piece of devised work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Create and perform a piece of devised work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Develop stimuli into a piece of devised theatre for performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Perform a piece of devised work using developed stimuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the techniques and processes used in the creation and performance of a piece of devised work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Evaluate the success of process relevant to own role in the devised piece</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 13: Acting 1*

*Unit 17: Acting for Camera*

*Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors*

*Unit 19: Movement for Actors*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 45: Immersive Theatre.*
Unit 21: Production Communication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1858</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

With any event, show or production, a cohesive team is essential. To ensure the smooth running of a production, communication requires an in-depth understanding of all areas of a performance. With advanced technologies, methods of communication in the performing industry will include a variety of equipment, media and visual methods to enable, improve and ensure that all productions run well.

In this unit, students will learn to problem solve, be a creative innovator and be able to articulate, in detail and in a variety of ways, where skills are utilised within the creative industry. They will also have the opportunity to develop Health and Safety awareness, identifying alternative approaches to backstage or front-of-house co-ordination, and improve their skill set to enable them to be a supportive and crucial member within the whole of a team.

This unit will enable a student to communicate using a variety of methods such as oral communication and communication technologies. They will be able to develop and interpret tasks and competencies to ensure discussions and activities are logically organised and managed within the vocational context. These sets of skills can be utilised in any job which requires teamwork and innovative responses to specific tasks.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore communication methods used in a production
2. Identify the main features of communication related to a set brief
3. Demonstrate communication skills through a defined role in a production
4. Assess the effectiveness of communication skills used in a production.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore communication methods used in a production

*Managing members of a production team:*
Communication skills (listening and understanding)
Relationship building
Delegation of activities/tasks
Team morale
Time management
Discipline
Motivation
Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), manual handling
Listening, observing, questioning, clarifying
People skills
Stress management
Character types

*Managing staff:*
Clarity in communication
Follow up
Supporting and guiding
Supportive language
Goal setting
Reward
Respect
Discipline
Time management
Technology
Health and wellbeing
LO2  **Identify the main features of communication related to a set brief**

*Managing staff:*
- Clarity in communication, follow up
- Supporting and guiding
- Supportive language
- Goal setting

*Health and Safety:*
- Review of existing knowledge
- Updating of information and resources
- Production specific regulations
- Manual handling
- Electrical testing (PAT)
- Fire regulations
- Set construction and venue
- Crowd control, pyrotechnics
- Disability access
- Disability Discrimination Act
- Environmental issues, heat, cold, wet
- Cleaning up
- Accountability

LO3  **Demonstrate communication skills through a defined role in a production**

*Identifying, selecting and scheduling events:*
- Booking events
- Contracts
- Considerations as to nature and size of venue
- Marketing strategies
- Audience promotion
- Budgeting
- Ticket sales
Fundraising:
Sourcing and securing funds from local authorities, business sponsors, trusts, private donors
Formats - spreadsheets, word, written
Flexibility
Ownership
Ability to change plans
Inform and record decisions
Production meetings
Agenda
Minutes, attendees, recording information
Control of Noise at Work Regulations 2005
First-stage and second-stage action limits
COSHH, PUWER, LOLER, risk assessments
HSE event safety guide

LO4 **Assess the effectiveness of communication skills used in a production**

*Producing and managing production paperwork*
*Compiling production requirements in preparation for a production meeting*

*Presenting information in a production meeting:*
Managing staff and meetings
Reading reference book
Legislative materials and plans
Using the information in production meetings
Posting production schedules and information on requirements of staff and equipment
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the range of communication methods used in a production</td>
<td><strong>LO1 and LO2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore communication methods used in a production</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Assess the impact of poor communication during a live production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse how technology influences communication methods in productions, and potential risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Define the communication methods used in a production specific to own specialist area</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Assess aims and objectives of communication tools selected and potential barriers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Identify the main features of communication related to a set brief</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a proactive response to communication methods during a production</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate effective, proactive and reflective communication skills throughout a live production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the effectiveness of verbal methods of communicating from a set brief</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Define areas for development in own communication skills for use in productions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Review the effectiveness of using technology as a communication tool during a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate communication skills through a defined role in a production</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse a wide variety of communication tools and their effectiveness in the production process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Outline selected communication methods to be used in a defined role in a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate effective communication skills in a defined role in a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Assess the effectiveness of communication skills used in a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review effectiveness of communication tools used in a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Assess own communication skills used in a production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 22: Stagecraft*
*Unit 29: Crewing.*
Unit 22: Stagecraft

Unit code | F/616/1834
---|---
Unit level | 4
Credit value | 15

Introduction

Stagecraft is the team working of the backstage crew in a production. This unit is designed to introduce the students to the principles and practicalities of backstage team work during a live production. Students will undertake a role in one department, developing and evidencing a full understanding of what that role requires.

The backstage of a live production is often a crowded area. A live production requires a team from each department to ensure that the performance runs smoothly, safely and as planned. Backstage work can range from scenic changes, costume and make up changes, lighting and sound requirements, to stage management and the provision of hand props for actors. Each team will need to understand both their own particular role and department, and also about how that role might impact on both the wider production team and the performers.

Space backstage is often limited, and each person backstage must accord all other backstage personnel a professional approach and utilise a particular backstage etiquette. Live productions are events which may go exactly as planned each time, or for many reasons may not. Plans must be made for each part of the performance, and each team must anticipate and risk assess instances which may occur in an unusual or emergency situation.

By the end of this unit students will be able to work efficiently backstage on a live production.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the responsibilities of backstage roles and the teamwork involved
2. Evaluate a script, defining the responsibilities of a specific role backstage in a production
3. Anticipate issues pertaining to that role, by risk assessment
4. Evaluate the backstage work of the production.
Essential Content

LO1 Explain the responsibilities of backstage roles and the teamwork involved

Preproduction:
Departmental responsibilities
Departmental hierarchy and roles
The wider production team
Interaction of differing department teams
Job specifics
Venues, performance, performers’ impact on backstage roles
Health and Safety
Backstage etiquette
Health and wellbeing

LO2 Evaluate a script, defining the responsibilities of a specific role backstage in a production

Type of script:
Type of performance
Venue
Set
Budget
Backstage space
Length of performance
Quick changes for your department
Consideration of wider production team
Script analysis for backstage
Performance planning
LO3  **Anticipate issues pertaining to that role by risk assessment**

*Risk assessments:*
- Anticipate potential issues
- Emergency kit required
- Contingencies
- Audience considerations
- Performer considerations
- Crew considerations
- Backstage space
- Health and wellbeing: stress management, anxiety and pressure etc

LO4  **Evaluate the backstage work of the production**

*Review:*
- Time management – speed of problem solving
- Communication methods and effectiveness
- Meeting aims and objectives
- Areas for development
- Health and wellbeing
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the responsibilities of backstage roles and the teamwork involved</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify the key roles and responsibilities of backstage crew for each department</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse how the backstage crew must work together to ensure a successful production, clearly defining the work of each key role and how they should interact with others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Assess how the key roles of each department are required to communicate and work together backstage on a production</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the interaction and co-operation of backstage crew necessary during a production</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse a script for a performance, giving a structured account of the backstage requirements for the chosen department, showing co-operation and consideration for other departments backstage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Evaluate a script defining the responsibilities of a specific role backstage in a production</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Evaluate a script for issues pertaining to a specific department during the performance</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse anticipated instances which may occur backstage for your department, discussing strategies to help prevent them occurring, and providing thorough risk assessment to cover all eventualities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Evaluate a script for a performance, giving a comprehensive account of the backstage requirements for that performance by the chosen department</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the role of the backstage crew for that department during the run of the performance</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse events occurring backstage during the performance, giving clear strategies for improvement in backstage roles for future performances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Anticipate issues pertaining to that role by risk assessment</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Describe issues that might occur backstage which would require quick thinking by your department</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Discuss events that may occur during the performance which would require action backstage to remedy, providing comprehensive risk assessments to clearly address those issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Describe how these issues might be addressed and risk assess as necessary</td>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the backstage work of the production</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse what happened backstage during the performance, providing a comprehensive account of what might be improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain what happened backstage during the performance</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Discuss areas for development for future productions</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Discuss events that may occur during the performance which would require action backstage to remedy, providing comprehensive risk assessments to clearly address those issues</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 21: Production Communication*
*Unit 29: Crewing*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 55: Management Role*.
Unit 23: Lighting Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>H/616/1860</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Lighting has become a vital tool in the performing arts, not only to see the performers and to draw the audience’s attention, but to move us in time and place and to enhance the mood. During the performance itself, be that theatre, music or even commercial events, it is the lighting operator that makes it happen in real time by following a plan accurately but being able to respond to changes in a live situation.

This unit aims to introduce students to the skills, techniques and equipment that are used by the lighting operator in a theatre. They will investigate and explore the role and develop the skills required to plan, programme and operate the equipment.

Topics in the unit will look at different types of lighting operation equipment used currently in the industry, ranging from simple memory lighting desks to larger desks with intelligent lighting control, the creation, reading and following of documentation for lighting operation and the skills required to set-up, programme and operate for a live performance.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to perform the role of a lighting operator for the set-up and running of a public performance.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator
2. Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting operator using industry-standard practice
3. Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting operator in preparation for performance
4. Perform the role of the lighting operator in a live performance to a professional standard.
Essential Content

**LO1 Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator**

*Investigate the roles, responsibilities and skills of the lighting operator:*

Production – attending rehearsals

Fit-up, e.g. setting up the physical equipment, setting up the lighting desk and patching

Rigging and focusing – operating the lighting desk for the focus, reading a focus schedule

Plotting – programming the lighting desk with cues, sub-masters and palettes

Tech and dress run – creating a cue sheet, following audio and visual cues

Performance run – power-up, equipment checks, power-down

Cue sheets, rig, patch and focus plans, manuals, show reports

**Health, Safety and wellbeing**

*Investigate the equipment used by the lighting operator:*

Lighting instruments – generic lanterns, intelligent lighting

Associated equipment, e.g. colour scrollers, smoke and haze machines

Power and communication – dimmers, DMX, Art-Net

Lighting consoles – simple theatre memory desk, large multi-cue desks with intelligent lighting functionality

**LO2 Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting operator using industry-standard practice**

*Be able to use and operate lighting equipment*

*Setting up:*

Power distribution, communication, e.g. DMX, Art-Net

*Lighting desks:*

Setting up

Patching

Programming and editing (cues, chase, sub-masters, intelligent fixtures, palettes)
Advanced programming functions, e.g. timing, delay, LTP/HTP, tracking, mark cues, effects

*Setting up and using a visualiser*

*Playback:*
Responding to stage management
Visual and auditable cues
Manual live operation
Responding to problems

*Be able to read and create appropriate documentation:*
Rig and focus plans
Focus schedule
Stage management reports

**LO3** Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting operator in preparation for performance

*The fit-up*

*Setting up*
Power distribution
DMX/Art-Net
addressing and patching

*Focus:*
Responding to the lighting designer
Health and Safety
Plotting

*Reading, creating and understanding focus plans and cue sheets:*
Programming and editing (cues, chase, sub-masters, intelligent fixtures, palletes)
Advanced programming functions, e.g. timing, delay, LTP/HTP, tracking, mark cues, effects
Responding to the lighting designer and directorial requirements
Tech and dress rehearsals
Responding to cues
Responding to feedback
Making minor alterations during the rehearsals
Taking appropriate notes
Editing cues
Editing cue sheet

LO4 **Perform the role of the lighting operator in a live performance to a professional standard**

*Operate the lighting for a public performance*

*Load show*

*Playback:*
Communication etiquette
Responding to visual and audio cues
Responding to stage management and front of house

*Complex cues:*
Intelligent lighting
Mark cues
Chases
Multiple cues
Live manual operations (e.g. Step times using palettes)
Self-cuing
Sequences

*Other duties:*
E.g. Power-up
Equipment check
Health and Safety
Issue reporting
Emergency maintenance
Problem solving
Power-down
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the role of the lighting operator in relation to responsibilities, skill set and the purpose of the equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the different equipment which the lighting operator would be expected to use to carry out their role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting operator using industry-standard practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Develop skills required to set up and operate equipment used in lighting operation accurately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore skills in creating and using documentation used in lighting operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting operator in preparation for performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting operator during the fit-up, accurately and independently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting operator during the fit-up, accurately and independently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out the programming of a lighting console for a performance, creating basic cues and timings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **LO4** Perform the role of the lighting operator in a live performance to a professional standard | **M4** Perform the role of lighting operator in a public performance, responding to a range of cues, including complex cues and self-cuing, and carrying out and recording all other duties independently  
**M8** Analyse own performance, identifying areas of strength and areas to improve | **D4** Perform the role of the lighting operator in performance and surrounding duties to a professional standard, producing a report critically evaluating performance with justified conclusions |
| **P7** Perform the role of a lighting operator in public performance, independently responding to cues and carrying out additional responsibilities accurately  
**P8** Review own performance, identifying areas of strength and areas to improve | | |
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.avolites.com  Avolites
Lighting console manufacturer
General reference

www.etcconnect.com  ETC
Homepage
General reference

www.malighting.com  MA Lighting
Lighting console manufacturer
General reference

www.strandlighting.com  Strand Lighting
Lighting console manufacturer
General reference

www.youtube.com  YouTube – Creative Choices
Lighting Operations Manager, National Theatre
Video

www.youtube.com  YouTube – Lyric Opera of Chicago
On the magic of theatrical lighting
Video
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 24: Sound Operation.
Unit 24: Sound Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1861</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Sound and technical operations are a fundamental and integral part of today's performing arts. Working as part of a wider technical team, the sound operator helps to realise the overall sound design for a live production. The role requires a diverse range of skills from sound theory and acoustics to technical ability and an understanding of today's diverse performing arts sector.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the fundamental aspects of performance sound through hands-on technical experience and training. The skills and knowledge covered will provide a basis and point of reference for practical live sound operation in a range of performance scenarios.

Topics included in this unit cover a range of core concepts, to include sound theory, acoustics, sound equipment and specifications, sound reinforcement concepts, venue technical specifications, front of house (FOH) and stage/pit monitor mixing, Health and Safety, and working as part of a technical team. In addition, students will assess their work in the light of current industry practice.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able plan and manage the sound specifications and ‘on the night’ realisation of a live performance event, including rigging and sound checking, FOH and monitor mixing, and managing live and pre-recorded musical cues and special effects (SFX).
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the technical and acoustic factors of a performance venue
2. Produce a technical plan for a live performance
3. Undertake the sound operation of a live performance
4. Review the sound operation undertaken, identifying strengths and areas for development.
Essential Content

LO1 Assess the technical and acoustic factors of a performance venue

*Types of performance space to include:*
- Theatres
- Concert halls
- Venues
- Dance studios
- Public spaces
- Open-air venues

*Sound theory:*
- Principles of sounds – frequency, wavelength, phase, amplitude, and harmonic content
- Sound propagation – transmission, reflection, absorption, and directivity

*Acoustic factors and mitigations:*
- Reverberation
- Absorption
- Room response
- Resonance

*Screens, curtains, equalisation, and variable acoustics*

*Sound reinforcement:*
- Microphones/DI – types, specifications, performance, usage and placement
- FOH systems and stage/pit monitoring – mixing consoles, amplification, speaker arrays, IEMs, equalisation, dynamic range processing, time-based effects
- Cables and connections
- Noise levels – venue licensing considerations and public health
- Playback and recording equipment
- Accessibility
LO2 **Produce a technical plan for a live performance**

*Technical planning:*

Nature of performance space and acoustic considerations

Nature of performance and performer/audience factors, e.g. dance, spoken word, immersive theatre, music, stage and audience positioning, etc.

Sound reinforcement requirements (in reference to the considerations above)

Placement and practicalities

Health and Safety considerations

Budgeting and costs

LO3 **Undertake the sound operation of a live performance**

*Set-up and get-in:*

Set-up and sound check for a live performance – FOH, stage/pit monitoring

*Performance sound operation:*

FOH MIX – effective balance and correct gain structuring throughout the system

MONS MIX – effective balance and correct gain structuring throughout the system stage/pit monitoring, IEMs (in-ear monitoring)

Avoidance of distortion and feedback

Effective referencing and metering

*Music and SFX cues:*

Use of pre-recorded and live sound and music cues

Working with a ‘prompt book/calling script’

*Professionalism, communication, and team working skills:*

Communication with performers and other venue and technical staff

Communication with the Stage Manager/stage management team (DSM/ASM)

Health, safety and wellbeing
LO4 Review the sound operation undertaken, identifying strengths and areas for development

Critical analysis of work throughout the performance, informed through tutor and peer feedback and evaluation

Organisations

Key contacts

Impact of online activities through social media and technology skills required
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess the technical and acoustic factors of a performance venue</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Identify key acoustic factors, to include reverberation time, room size and absorption</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Evaluate the technical and acoustic factors of a performance venue in relation to a specific live performance, to include reverberation time, room size, absorption, stage layout and performance specific considerations, microphone types and placement, FOH and stage/pit monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Assess the acoustic factors of a performance venue</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Identify key technical specifications, to include microphone types and placement, FOH and stage/pit monitoring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss the technical specifications of a performance venue in relation to the nature of the performance and acoustic factors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce a technical plan for a live performance</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Review relevant acoustic factors, specifying correction and mitigation where appropriate</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate the technical plan, reflecting on acoustic considerations, technical considerations, performance-specific elements, Health and Safety, audience experience and expectations and current industry practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce a technical plan for a live performance</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Justify technical decisions based on the nature of the performance space and intended performance parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Discuss Health and Safety considerations in relation to crew, performers and the members of the public</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake the sound operation of a live performance</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Apply appropriate performance space analysis and justify the setup of the equipment in the performance environment</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Stage and manage the sound operation of a live performance professionally, ensuring correct gain structure throughout, avoiding unwanted distortion and feedback and maintaining a safe environment for all parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Undertake the sound operation of a live performance</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Apply appropriate sound processing techniques to enhance tonal, dynamic and spatial qualities, to include dynamic processing, equalisation, pan and stereo positioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Consider the Health and Safety of the crew, performers and audience throughout</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the sound operation undertaken, identifying strengths and areas for development</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Use tutor and peer feedback to identify strengths and areas for development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Review the sound operation undertaken, identifying strengths and areas for development</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Assess the sound operation undertaken, using feedback from other stage and technical crew</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the sound operation undertaken, using feedback from the audience and external stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 21: Production Communication*
*Unit 22: Stagecraft.*
Unit 25: Special FX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>T/616/1863</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Special effects, or ‘Special FX’, create illusions which can play a large part in audience enthrallment, often providing spectacular visual parts of a production to make the audience gasp in amazement, or providing unanticipated shocks which can make an audience gasp in horror or fear. Special effects in the creative industries cover a vast range of options as new technology provides new possibilities.

The options can range from areas such as prosthetics or costume parts on performers to puppetry and animatronics, animated props, fake snow or fog, pyrotechnics, and lighting and sound effects. Each of these areas of effects has their own range of possibilities, tempered by the requirements of the specific production, the budget and also the Health and Safety considerations – which are a very important part of special FX. This unit also covers a wide range of special effects required to create specific illusions in productions. Every special effect must take into consideration, not only the impact on the audience, but also on the production and the performers.

This unit is designed to allow students to investigate special effects and all of the Health and Safety aspects arising from using those effects live onstage. Students will then undertake a role in providing special effects and evaluate the success of the effects produced.

By the end of this unit students will be able to create risk assessed special effects.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the range of special effects available for live productions, detailing the associated risks
2. Interpret a director's brief and script for a live production which requires special effects risk assessing as appropriate
3. Realise the plan for special effects in the production
4. Evaluate the success of the plan for special effects in the production.
Essential Content

LO1 **Explain the range of special effects available for live productions, detailing the associated risks**

*Research Special FX companies and technologies:*
Examine differing effects for each department in a production
Effects on audience
Effects on the production
Effects on performers
Dangers of effects
Risks of effects
Health and Safety legislation for effects

LO2 **Interpret a director’s brief and script for a live production which requires special effects, risk assessing as appropriate**

*The script/the director’s brief:*
Budget
The venue
Type of production
 Desired effect on stage
 Desired impact on audience
 Potential effects available
 Potential risks
 Type of effects to be used
 Dangers
 Health and Safety
 Current legislation
 Communication with wider production team of effects
 Co-operation with wider production team
 Risk assessment for special effects team, venue, performers, production team, audience
LO3  **Realise the plan for special effects in the production**

*Undertake a special effects role in a live performance*

LO4  **Evaluate the success of the plan for special effects in the production**

*Review:*

- Time management skills
- Aims and objectives
- Communication methods and techniques
- Appropriateness of technical methods and skills
- Audience interaction
- Areas for future development
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the range of special effects available for live productions, detailing the associated risks</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explore the range of special effects available for live production, giving perceptive examples and a critical and comprehensive analysis of the associated risks</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the range of special effects available for live production, giving perceptive examples and a critical and comprehensive analysis of the associated risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain a range of special effects that are available for use in live productions</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explain how specific special effects will work safely on a live production in relation to the director’s brief and the script</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate differing ways of producing special effects safely in relation to the director’s brief and the script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the risks associated with the range of special effects discussed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Interpret a director’s brief and script for a live production which requires special effects, risk assessing as appropriate</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Realise competent special effects for a production</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Realise a comprehensive and successful range of special effects for a production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret a director’s brief for the creation of special effects for a live performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Discuss how special effects will be safely used in conjunction with the script</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Realise the plan for special effects in the production</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the success of the special effects, using cohesive reasoning and suggesting improvements</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate the special effects, suggesting further skilful improvements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Realise appropriate special effects for the live production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Evaluate the success of the special effects for the production using competent reasoning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry

Unit 2: Professional Development

Unit 21: Production Communication

Unit 22: Stagecraft.
Unit 26: Scenic Construction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1865</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The role of the scenic constructor is to make a set from designs produced by the set designer. The constructor must be able to interpret designs from plans and models, and communicate any potential issues with the set to the designer. The constructor must work with the designer's ideas and be able to provide a set which is true to the design but also viable for the production and the performer in the production. It must also work with any constraint of the production space.

Health and Safety is a vital part of the scenic construction activity as the work often involves the use of hand tools, power tools and electricity in order to make and join the differing parts of the set. The scenic constructor must be aware of all current legislation for any Health and Safety aspects in the construction of the set, and risk assess any potential issues before commencing the construction.

The construction of a set is often a team effort which involves communicating with the designer, the director, the wider construction team and the production manager to ensure that a set is completed to a specific deadline which is often very short. The scenic constructor must take into consideration the timescale when planning the construction of the set. Successful communication ensures that the set when finished is fit for purpose for all departments, including the performers and the behind the scenes workers.

At the end of this unit, students will be able to work safely from designs to create a viable set for a production.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Interpret designs for a production
2. Produce a set from the interpretation of those designs
3. Demonstrate Health and Safety risk assessment
4. Evaluate the success of the set within a live production.
Essential Content

LO1 Interpret designs for a production

Checking and discussion of drawings/models
Scaling of diagrams, models, drawings
Consideration of performance space
Industry-specific terminology
Producing working drawings
Liaison with designer and wider production team
Technology considerations – projections, etc
Budget
Planning of timescale
Delegation of work
Communication of deadlines

LO2 Produce a set from the interpretation of those designs

Initial planning
Selecting appropriate materials, e.g. timber, sheet materials, rope, acrylic, plastic, fabric
Selecting appropriate tools
Selecting appropriate fixings
Selecting appropriate construction techniques
Selecting appropriate joining techniques
Communication with team
Communication with designer
Time management
LO3 **Demonstrate Health and Safety risk assessment**

*Hazard:*
Tools, power supply, chemicals
Health and Safety legislation
Tools and chemicals used
Fire safety
Safe working
Risk assessment paperwork

LO4 **Evaluate the success of the set within a live production**

*Practicalities of the set*
*Durability of the set*
*Use of the set by performers*
*Use of the set by the production team*
*Backstage space usage*
*Audience and user feedback*
*Improvements for future*
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1 Interpret designs for a production</strong></td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Interpret designs for a production, suggesting sound methods for construction</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Interpret designs for a production, suggesting reasoned methods for construction which wholly consider the impact of the set on the wider production team and the performers</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Interpret designs for a production using insightful suggestions which articulate in depth the impact of the set on the wider production team and the performers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2 Produce a set from the interpretation of those designs</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Construct a set which appropriately meets the requirements of the production</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Construct a set which effectively meets the requirements of the production and shows confident use of a range of skills</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Construct a set which fully meets the requirements of the production, considers all aspects of that production, and demonstrates a sophisticated use of skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3 Demonstrate Health and Safety risk assessment</strong></td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate an appropriate awareness of current Health and Safety legislation relating to equipment used in the build of the set</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a sound awareness of Health and Safety legislation, producing a cohesive set of risk assessments which relate to all aspects of the set build</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate abidance of Health and Safety legislation, and produce a set of authoritative risk assessments which are accurate and consistent and pertain to all aspects of the set construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4 Evaluate the success of the set within a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate the impact of the set on the performers, providing coherent examples</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the impact of the set on the performers and the production team, providing pertinent examples and discussing strengths and weaknesses</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the impact of the set on the performers and the production team, providing perceptive examples and an in-depth discussion of the strengths and weaknesses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 21: Production Communication*
*Unit 22: Stagecraft*
*Unit 29: Crewing*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 54: Production Design*
*Unit 55: Management Role*
*Unit 58: Set Design.*
Unit 27: Costume Construction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/1866</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

There are multiple visual areas that require bespoke, character costumes such as the theatre, film, TV and the music industry, dance and performing arts. Historical, contemporary and thematic research, sourcing, and developing a character creates a practical opportunity to develop and produce garments for both real and fictional characters.

Costume construction consists of understanding and developing the skills required to pursue a successful career within the industry. It also introduces the management and care of a garment, including wear and tear, flexibility, whether it is fit for purpose, and Health and Safety. To create a pattern requires an understanding of construction. Additionally, adapting a garment through recycling and salvaging fabrics and cloths requires innovation and material experimentation. The finished garments produced will need to durable enough to withstand all performances.

This unit will allow students to construct and create costumes using a variety of techniques and processes with a view to bring to life specific characters allocated through a production or themed brief. They should be able to produce a costume fit for purpose in relation to a set brief.

By the end of this unit, students will have developed a range of generic transferable techniques which will enable them to be innovative and adaptable with costume construction and respond effectively to the demands of employment within a costume role.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore a range of methods for costume construction
2. Produce patterns for costumes to a set brief
3. Construct costume/s to a set brief using a wide range of construction methods
**Essential Content**

**LO1 Explore a range of methods for costume construction**

*Interpret:*
- Concept
- Text
- Characters
- Vision

*Identify:*
- Sourcing
- Hiring

*Experiment through:*
- Cutting
- Sewing techniques
- Machine and hand sewing
- Sampling
- Dyeing
- Distressing
- Embroidery and embellishing
- Material types
- Adaptation of garments

**LO2 Produce patterns for costumes to a set brief**

*Source:*
- Commercial
- Prepare twarls, if required
- Plan components of garments
- Use blocks, if required
Adaptations of clothes sourced:
Log changes and adaptations
Identify constraints
Consider alternatives and log:
Cleaning
Pattern drafts
Storage
Material selection g swatches
Securing
Collars and cuffs
Fastenings

LO3 Construct costume/s to a set brief using a wide range of construction methods

Part or full constructions:
Sewing
Cutting
Weaving
Fastenings
Seam finishes
Hems
Trims
Printing
Yoke pattern
Sleeves
Skirts bodice pattern
Trousers
Fitting
Application and finishing
LO4 **Analyse methods of construction for character costume**

Logging:
Size conventions, e.g. Europe, U.S.
Fabric Health and Safety
Durability
Fragility
Adaptations
Hair and wig requirements
Cleaning and maintenance
Cast
Accessories
Evaluate
Suitability
Fit for performance
Reliability
Maintenance
Identify specified silhouette for a given body shape
Locate and select appropriate sources related to specific body shape
Fit a costume to be used in performance
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore a range of methods for costume construction</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore techniques and processes for costume production including Health and Safety procedures</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong> Analyse a diverse range of techniques and methods and their effectiveness in communicating characterisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss communication of character through costume construction</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Compare a range of techniques and processes used to construct costumes</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse a diverse range of techniques and processes that effectively communicate intentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce patterns for costumes to a set brief</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Justify a selection of materials and construction methods to meet a set design brief</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce costume patterns that demonstrate technical skills and clear understanding of characterisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Produce patterns for costume construction to meet a set brief</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explore how materials and construction methods effectively meet set brief intentions</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate effective material selection working to a set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Construct costume/s to a set brief using a wide range of construction methods</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate a wide range of costume construction techniques working to a set brief</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate adherence to appropriate Health and Safety policies in costume creation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse effectiveness of costume construction processes used</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Create costumes that demonstrate a clear understanding of characterisation appropriate to set brief</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explore areas for future skills development based on analysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft.
Unit 28: Hair and Make-up Application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1868</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit is designed to help learners to understand the requirements of the role and hair and makeup artist in a live production, producing the necessary paperwork and evaluating the success of the role.

The hair and make-up department in a production work closely with the costume and set departments to determine the look of the characters for the chosen text. Hair and make-up application is not only an artistic skill, but it also requires expertise in a range of specialist technical skills and a full knowledge of health and safety issues pertaining to hair and skin sensitivities and allergies. Make-up and hair artists must be able to interpret the designs for the production and then understand how to use a range of techniques to achieve the desired effects required for successful characterisation. The make-up and hair applicator must be able to understand human anatomy and how to change the shapes of facial features and to apply imitation hair to achieve desired effects. These effects must be fully planned and documented so that the exact same look can be achieved every night of a performance. The make-up and hair applied must also be resilient enough in order to stay in place for the full length of the performance.

The hair and make-up department must have excellent communication skills, including diplomacy and sensitivity in working with actors.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to undertake a role as a hair and make-up artist for a live production.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Produce plans to realise the make-up and hair designs for a live production
2. Produce risk assessments for make-up and hair techniques used on the performers in the production
3. Undertake a role as a make-up/hair artist in a live production
4. Analyse the success of the hair and make-up for a live production.
Essential Content

LO1 Produce plans to realise the make-up and hair designs for a live production

Techniques
Applications
Materials – make up, hair styling
Costings
Timings
Performer’s considerations

LO2 Produce risk assessments for make-up and hair techniques used on the performers in a production

Risk assessments:
Health and Safety in the workplace
Health and Safety of hair stylists
Health and Safety of make-up artists
Health and Safety of performers
Make-up product analysis
Hair product analysis
Use of sprays
Cleansers
Allergies
Wigs/hairpieces
Applicators
Equipment
Contingency
Precautions
LO3 **Undertake a role as a make-up/hair artist on a live production**

- Personal management
- Set up of kit
- Pre-preparation management
- Performance management
- Backstage plans
- Contingency
- Post-performance

LO4 **Analyse the success of the hair and make-up for a live production**

- Reflection on preparations
- Analysis of role
- Backstage etiquette
- Reflection on techniques
- Audience feedback
- Performer feedback
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce plans to realise the makeup and hair designs for a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse a set of hair and make-up designs for a live production to provide in-depth plans for the application processes and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce working plans from designs for the make-up in a live performance</strong></td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse a set of hair and make-up designs for a live production to provide considered working plans with detailed application processes and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Produce working plans from designs for the hair requirements in a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse hair and make-up designs to provide in-depth risk assessments for performers and hair and make-up artists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce risk assessments for make-up and hair techniques used on the performers in a production</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce appropriate risk assessments for make-up techniques used on the live performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce appropriate risk assessments for make-up techniques used on the live performance</strong></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse hair and make-up plans to provide thorough risk assessments for performers and hair and make-up artists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce appropriate risk assessments for hair styling techniques used on the live performance</strong></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Realise plans and risk-assessed techniques to skilfully and confidently undertake a role as a hair artist on a live production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Undertake a role as a make-up/hair artist in a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Realise plans and risk-assessed techniques to effectively undertake a role as a hair artist on a live production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Realise plans and risk-assessed techniques to undertake a role as a make-up artist on a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse the success of the make-up application and hair styling on the live production with in-depth inclusion of peer and audience feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td><strong>Realise plans and risk-assessed techniques to undertake a role as a hair artist on a live production</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Analyse the success of the hair and make-up for a live production</strong></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the success of the make-up application and hair styling on the live production with in-depth inclusion of peer and audience feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td><strong>Analyse the success of the make-up application on the live production</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td><strong>Analyse the success of the hair styling on the live production</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 54: Production Design
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 61: Hair and Make-up Design.
Unit 29: Crewing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/616/1870</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Before the actors on a show can start their performance, there is a set of backstage professionals who work to short deadlines and to strict Health and Safety guidelines to ensure that the stage at the venue is correctly set up and ready for use. This team is called the crew, and can include those working on the construction of the set, the rigging of lighting and the cabling and setting up PA systems for the required sound.

Despite being from different departments, it is essential that the backstage crew work seamlessly together as a team so that the work can be completed correctly, efficiently and often to a very tight deadline. This teamwork is then carried on to the actual performance where the crew will work backstage during the live production, ensuring that all technical requirements, such as scene changes, lighting changes and sound effects, are well co-ordinated and effected at the correct times. The crew are often the unsung heroes of a production, literally working unseen ‘behind the scenes’ to make sure that the show is an experience that the audience will enjoy. Backstage crew are often the unsung heroes of theatrical work – working long hours and being in the theatre long after the performers have gone home.

This unit is designed to give students the opportunity to work backstage on a live production, having undertaken a considered investigation and research of each role beforehand.

At the end of this unit, students will have a wide understanding of the full range of roles and responsibilities pertaining to backstage crew in a live production.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the roles and responsibilities associated with crewing for a live production
2. Detail the crewing required for a specific live production, risk assessing as necessary
3. Undertake a stage crew role for a live production
4. Analyse the skills and etiquette required backstage for the live production.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Explain the roles and responsibilities associated with crewing for a live production

*Roles and responsibilities:*
- Stagehand
- Follow spot operator
- Dresser
- Mic wrangler
- Flyman
- Call boy
- Prop running

*Following cues/directions:*

*Pre-production duties for specific roles*

*Duties during performance for specific roles*

*Organisation*

*Communication between crew members before and during performance*

*Likely tasks:*
- Taking responsibility for setting up start of show and re-setting before each performance
- Following and listening out for cues
- Carrying out assigned tasks or actions on cue
- Deconstructing and dismantling items as part of striking the set
- Taking part in the packing-up process
- Taking note of the sequencing of activities
- Working as part of a team to load
- Dispose
- Transport and/or return items and equipment
LO2  **Detail the crewing required for a specific live production risk assessing as necessary**

*Safe working practices:*
- Handling equipment
- Materials and substances
- Lifting and manual handling
- Safe use of power tools
- Hazard identification
- Reduction and assessment
- Use of access equipment and working at height
- Awareness of others and communicating instructions for others to ‘stand clear’
- Safe use of stage equipment
- Awareness of fire regulations and use of flameproof materials

*Documentation*
- Carrying out risk assessments
- Recording safety checks and instructions to others
- Adequate labelling and marking out to avoid hazards
- Inspection reports

LO3  **Undertake a stage crew role for a live production**

*Familiarity with backstage terminology:*
- Geography of backstage
- E.g. Wings
- Upstage
- Downstage
- Stage right
- Stage left
- Prompt corner
- Opposite prompt (OP) side
- Cyclorama
Green room
Fly floor
Trap door
Orchestra pit
Scene dock

*Stage equipment:*
E.g. Flats
Braces
Stage weights
Trucks
Rostra
Fly lines
Rigging
Curtain tracks
Drapes
Gaffer tape
Hook and eyes

*Carry out a role:*
Responding to instructions from stage manager/production manager
Understanding the tasks required as a member of the stage crew
Following plans
Drawings
Instruction sheets to erect and position items of scenery

*Roles include:*
Organising and assembling scenic elements
Organising the props table
Positioning and setting up equipment that will be used in the show
E.g. Follow spot
Smoke machine
Remote-controlled scenic devices
Backstage communication system
LO4 **Analyze the skills and etiquette required backstage for the live production**

**Recognising different skills required**

**How these were applied and developed**

**Carrying out a personal skills audit, e.g. carpentry skills, craft skills, welding and fabrication skills, physical abilities**

**Assessing personal capabilities in relation to tasks, e.g. ability to lift a scenic element according to its weight compared with pushing a scenic element on wheels**

**Reading plans and following instructions in order to position pre-fabricated elements correctly**

**Familiarisation with equipment to determine the operation procedure**

**Evaluating how effectively the stage crew worked as a team during the whole process**

**Identifying those aspects of the stage crew's performance during each run of the show that worked as planned and those that need improvement**

**Recognising and improving communication between members of the stage crew, particularly using talkback**

**Health, safety and wellbeing**
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the roles and responsibilities associated with crewing for a live production</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain the roles for a backstage crew in a live production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the roles and responsibilities of a full backstage crew, giving in-depth perceptive explanations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the responsibilities of each role for a backstage crew in a live production</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the roles and responsibilities of a full backstage crew with cohesive explanations</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse the crewing required for a specific production with full reference to the director’s brief and vision and detailing all risk assessments required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Detail the crewing required for a specific live production, risk assessing as necessary</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Detail the crewing required for a specific live production</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse the crewing required for a specific production with full reference to the director’s brief and vision and in-depth risk assessment paperwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the specific responsibilities for a backstage crew in the live production, risk assessing as required</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Undertake a role as a backstage crew member demonstrating accomplished technical skills and dynamic personal management skills</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Undertake a role as a backstage crew member demonstrating accomplished technical skills and dynamic personal management skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake a stage crew role for a live production</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Undertake a role as a backstage crew member demonstrating appropriate skills</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the success of the backstage role, perceptively detailing the development of skills and giving in-depth analysis of any improvements required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain the skills needed for the backstage role, reflecting on own performance</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse the success of the backstage role, detailing the development of skills and any improvements required</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain how your backstage etiquette could be improved and developed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 21: Production Communication*

*Unit 22: Stagecraft*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 54: Production Design*

*Unit 55: Management Role*

*Unit 59: Stage Management.*
Unit 30: Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and Makeup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/617/1782</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The Fashion industry is an ever evolving, fast paced and highly competitive field. Makeup artists and hair stylists working within the Fashion and Fashion Editorial industry have to be innovative, creative and able to work under very tight time scales in a highly pressured environment. It is essential that makeup artists and hair stylists keep up to date with current trends which includes keeping up to date with the political and social environment which has always had a significant impact in the fashion world.

There are a variety of fashion and fashion editorial projects that hair and makeup artists must be experienced in and each have their own requirements. Magazines and runway shows, for example, will have their own style and artistic interpretation of what fashion is. As a makeup artist and/or hairstylist in this field, you have to demonstrate your own artistic ability whilst ensuring that you are working to the brief set by the designers and directors that have employed you.

Through this unit, students will develop Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup designing abilities whilst developing the technical skills required to work within a diverse variety of contexts to industry standards. Students will also develop their team working skills whilst exploring the need to be flexible, adaptable and perform under intense pressure.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling in the Fashion and Fashion editorial industry
2. Demonstrate Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup techniques
3. Undertake a role in a Fashion or Fashion Editorial Project working to a set brief
4. Analyse the strengths of the project in meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development.
Essential content

LO1 Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling in the Fashion and Fashion editorial industry

Fashion and fashion Editorial Industry:
Social
Cultural
Political
Economic factors.

Roles:
Designers
Editors
Models
Photographers
Stylists
Fashion icons.

Editorials:
Types and formats
Print and digital
Impact of covers and spreads.

Catwalks:
Social
Cultural and political influences and trends – current and historic.

Current trends and influences:
Technology
Social
Cultural
Political
Economic factors
Diversity.
LO2 Demonstrate Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup techniques

Preparation:
Working to a brief
Creating designs
Planning process
Drawings
References
Charts
Working in a team
Timescales
Originality
Exploring ideas.

Health and safety:
Regulations
Policies and procedures that must be adhered to
Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair:
Industry standard tools
Equipment and products
Hair preparation
Dressing
Styling and finishing techniques
Preparation and application of hair pieces.

Fashion and Fashion Editorial Makeup:
Industry standard tools
Equipment and products
Skin preparation (body and face) skin aftercare
Techniques for a wide and diverse range of environments.
Portfolio building:
Types of portfolio – digital or print – drawings and sketches
Reference documentation
Photographic images
Research materials
Portfolio requirements for employers.

LO3 Undertake a role in a Fashion or Fashion Editorial Project working to a set brief

Working to a brief:
Deadlines
time management
interpreting briefs.

Event type:
Photo shoot
Runway event
locations
lighting
health and safety policies and procedures.

Resources:
Kit
Model selection
Preparation
charts
Designs
Reference material.
Team Work:
Communication skills
Working under pressure
Working within a creative team
Confidence and assurity
Time management.

LO4 Analyse the strengths of the project in meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development

Working to a brief:
Meeting outcomes and expectations
Meeting deadlines
Time management.

Planning process:
Effectiveness of planning
Research
Design process
Originality.

Technical Skills:
Effectiveness and appropriateness of range of techniques, styles, tools and kit used.

Personal skills:
Communication skills
Team working skills
Time management
Confidence
Organisation
Independent skills.
Feedback:
Tutor
Peer
Audience
Industry specialists where possible.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling in the Fashion and Fashion editorial industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Investigate the social impact of editorial covers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore a wide range of Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate a range of Fashion and Fashion editorial hair and/or makeup techniques, working to an industry standard brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake a role in a Fashion or Fashion Editorial Project working to a set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Develop designs to meet the requirements for a set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out a makeup and/or hair role for a photo shoot or runway event as defined by a set brief with confidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the strengths of the project in meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Evaluate areas for further development and the importance of communication skills in a Fashion project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.theindustry.fashion

The Industry
New and Insights
(General reference)

www.telegraph.co.uk

The Telegraph
The make-up artists to follow for fashion week (Article)
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism
Unit 25: Special FX
Unit 28: Hair and Makeup Application
Unit 31: Period Hair and Makeup
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 61: Hair and Makeup Design
Unit 65: The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist
Unit 66: Special FX 2
Unit 31: Period Hair and Makeup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/617/1781</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Working as a makeup artist or hair stylist requires a diverse range of skills to meet a wide area of settings. Duties and responsibilities depend on the sector or industry and artists will be required to use a portfolio of skills to suit the brief. Hair and/or makeup artists are frequently called upon to recreate historical hair and/or makeup to develop and produce period and iconic styles. There are a variety of historical fashions and trends to realistically recreate with the use of modern technology and tools to assist.

This unit is designed to enable students to work on a project for any medium and develop the required skills specific to work within defined historical periods. Students will be required to explore the expertise and knowledge required for a makeup/hair artist to work professionally within defined periods of history.

Students will be able to demonstrate how to recreate period designs and apply them with modern technology and tools. Through this unit students will develop the skills and concepts to work in professional settings to follow the professional standards and health and safety and produce Period Hair and/or Makeup portfolio to meet industry requirements.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling and techniques
2. Demonstrate hair and/or makeup techniques for a specified period of time, as defined through an industry standard set brief
3. Undertake a role in a period makeup and/or hair project, as defined by an industry standard set brief
4. Analyse the strengths of the period hair and/or makeup project in meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development.
Essential Content

LO1 **Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling and techniques**

*History of Makeup styles and techniques:*
Roman empire
Medieval period
17th Century
18th Century
19th Century
20th Century
21st Century to today
Cultural changes
Political and Economical factors
Environmental
Trends
Social factors
Equipment
Tools
Products

*History of Hair styles and techniques:*
Roman empire
Medieval period
17th Century
18th Century
19th Century
20th Century
21st Century to today
Cultural changes
Political and economical factors
Environmental
Trends
Social factors
Equipment
Tools
Products

LO2 **Demonstrate hair and/or makeup techniques for a specified period of time, as defined through an industry standard set brief**

**Preparation:**
- Working to a brief
- Planning process
- Creating designs
- Drawings
- References
- Charts
- Working in a team
- Timescales
- Originality
- Exploring ideas.

**Health and safety and professional standards:**
- Regulations policies and procedures that must be adhered to
- Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

**Period Hair image:**
- Industry standard tools
- Equipment and products
- Hair preparation
- Dressing
- Styling and finishing techniques
- Preparation and application of hair pieces.
**Period Makeup image:**
Industry standard tools
Equipment and products
Skin preparation (body and face) skin aftercare
Techniques for a wide and diverse range of environments.

**Portfolio building:**
Types of portfolio – digital or print
Drawings and sketches
Reference documentation
Photographic images
Research materials
Portfolio requirements for employers.

LO3 **Undertake a role in a period makeup and/or hair project, as defined by an industry standard set brief**

**Working to a brief:**
Deadlines
Time management
Interpreting briefs.

**Event type:**
Theatre Production
Film Set
Television Studio
Photo shoot
locations
lighting
health and safety policies and procedures.
**Resources:**
Professional Hair and/or Make up kit
Model selection
Preparation
Charts
Designs
Reference materials
Period costumes.

**Team Work:**
Communication skills
Working under pressure
Working within time restrictions
Working within a creative team
Confidence and assurity
Time management.

**Portfolios:**
Types of portfolio – digital and physical
Content
Presentation
Employer expectation.

**LO4 Analyse the strengths of the period hair and/or makeup project in meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development**

**Working to a brief:**
Meeting outcomes and expectations
Meeting deadlines
Time management.
Planning process:
Effectiveness of planning
Research
Design process
Originality.

Technical Skills:
Effectiveness and appropriateness of range of techniques, styles, tools and kit used.

Personal skills:
Communication skills
Team working skills
Time management
Confidence
Organisation
Independent skills.

Feedback:
Self-reflection
Tutor
Peer
Audience
Industry specialists where possible.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the historical development of hair and/or makeup styling and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the historical development of hair and/or make up styling and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Investigate the political, social and economic factors have had on hair and/or makeup styling on a range of defined eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore hair and/or make up techniques for a range of historical periods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate hair and/or makeup techniques, for a range of time periods, working to an industry standard brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate hair and/or makeup techniques for a specified period of time, as defined through an industry standard set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Develop designs to meet the requirements for a set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out a makeup and/or hair role for a project as defined by a set brief with confidence and assurity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate the planning, research and design process through the production of a portfolio as defined by the set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake a role in a period makeup and/or hair project, as defined by an industry standard set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Develop designs to meet the requirements for a set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out a makeup and/or hair role for a project as defined by a set brief with confidence and assurity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate the planning, research and design process through the production of a portfolio as defined by the set brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the impact political, economic and social changes have had on historical styling and techniques within the hair and makeup genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate how a wide and diverse range of makeup and/or hair styling and techniques can be used to portray historical characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate versatility, adaptability and effective technical and communication skills throughout the defined project as a makeup artist and/or hair stylist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explain the influence politics, social and economic change with regard to fashions in hair and makeup styling through a range of eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate how a diverse range of hair and/or makeup techniques can be used to create a historical portrayal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate creative historical makeup and/or hair styles and techniques through design development and application whilst meeting the set brief requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks


Websites

- [comestepbackintime.wordpress.com](http://comestepbackintime.wordpress.com) - Come Step Back in Time
  - Historical Hair and Make-up
    - (Article)

- [www.statece.com/blog](http://www.statece.com/blog) - StateCE Blog
  - How Cosmetology Has Changed Over the Years
    - (Article)

- [www.vam.ac.uk](http://www.vam.ac.uk) - Victoria and Albert Museum
  - Hairstyles and cosmetics reading list
    - (Reading list)
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism
Unit 25: Special FX
Unit 28: Hair and Makeup Application
Unit 30: Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and makeup
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 61: Hair and Makeup Design
Unit 65: The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist
Unit 66: Special FX 2
Unit 32: Creative Research Project (Pearson-set)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1942</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit type</td>
<td>Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

This unit will equip students from any area of interest with core research skills. Alongside learning qualitative and quantitative research methods, students will have the opportunity to apply these methods in the completion of a mini dissertation. With a strong emphasis on taking a creative approach to research, the completion of this dissertation will, in addition, demonstrate the academic requirements to progress into Level 6.

Furthermore, the dissertation will also be an opportunity for students to gather data that will have useful and practical application to their desired area of expertise, which will have the potential to create a strong foundation for career entry. For example, a research project could include investigating gender diversity within the performing arts industry, the influence and impact on a specific practitioner or the role and audience impact of special effects in a production. The research project can be undertaken as individuals or in small groups. The written work must be completed individually.

By the end of this unit, students will be armed with the necessary tools to not only enter the final year of a university degree, but to embark upon any career path within the performing arts industry.

*Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.*
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Plan a creative research study through qualitative and/or quantitative research methods
2. Creatively engage with a topic of choice within chosen field of interest
3. Analyse research data collected and present it as part of a written dissertation
4. Evaluate how the creative research project has influenced career planning.
Essential Content

**LO1** Plan a creative research study through qualitative and/or quantitative research methods

- Introduction to qualitative and quantitative research methods
- Define scope of study
- Methodology and methods – setting up the study framework
- Develop research questions

**LO2** Creatively engage with a topic of your choice within your chosen field of interest

- Develop list of research objectives
- Plan a research timeline
- Strategies to execute research
- Collection of research data

**LO3** Analyse research data collected and present as part of a written dissertation

- Preparing materials for analysis
- Methods of data analysis, e.g. discourse analysis, coding, semiotics
- Use of software e.g. NVivo, Tams
- Role of the researcher – bias, interpretation
- Interpret multiple sources of data and develop evidence-based conclusions and recommendations

**LO4** Evaluate how the creative research project has influenced career planning

- Critically evaluate the research design
- Identify practical outcomes of their research
- Engage with industry for professional feedback
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Plan a creative research study through qualitative and/or quantitative research methods</td>
<td><strong>LO1 and LO2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Explain key research methods</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the importance of research methodology and methods in the production of meaningful data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Define scope of study and develop research questions</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Discuss links between methodology and methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Justify the study design</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Justify the study design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Creatively engage with a topic of choice within chosen field of interest</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically interpret multiple sources of data through the production of a dissertation which shows evidence-based conclusions and recommendations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Describe research objectives and how the data was collected</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of research methods on the data collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Describe what data was collected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Analyse research data collected and present as part of a written dissertation</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate the effectiveness of the research methodology and methods through the production of a dissertation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Describe the key findings from the research</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate application of more than one tool for data analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Produce a dissertation based on the research data</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate how the creative research project has influenced career planning</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate the research process and findings and implement clear strategies for career development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate practical outcomes on career planning</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Analyse industry feedback on the research project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 63: Working in Creative Education.*
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>M/616/1943</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit type</td>
<td>Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

This unit has been designed in order to further explore working in the performing arts industry. It will support students of all disciplines, helping them to apply practical skills to prepare them for future employment as a performing arts professional.

In completing Level 4 of this qualification, students will have explored their career goals and their own individual skills in relation to future employment. This unit supports students in analysing those goals and how accessible they are, and the sustainability of their potential employment, so that they are fully informed about their intended progression route.

In the ever-changing and evolving world of technology and social media, the increased emphasis on personal marketing is an essential component to gaining employment. Through this unit, students will explore the world of marketing, as relevant to their discipline, and will create a marketing strategy along with a relevant and appropriate online presence to present to industry. Additionally, students will explore and analyse health and wellbeing awareness so that they may engage in a healthy working environment and increase their longevity as a worker in this challenging industry.

By the end of this unit, students will have created a marketing strategy and online profile to enhance their future employability prospects. They will also have developed a personal strategy, having analysed health and wellbeing and their own development, to work towards a sustainable career in the performing arts industry.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse own career goal and accessibility to employment of chosen role
2. Analyse the importance of health, safety and wellbeing within the workplace and own career development
3. Review the sustainability of a career in the performing arts industry and strategies to support long-term employability
4. Create a marketing strategy that will enhance and prolong the chosen career.
Essential Content

LO1 Analyse own career goal and accessibility to employment of chosen role

*Personal development in relevance to career goal:*
Skills audit
Technical skills
Development needs
Time-management skills
Financial management skills
Administrative skills
Self-promotional skills
Technology skills
Updating of skills relevant to industry needs

*Working under a contract:*
Self-employed
PAYE
Contract length
Legal rights
Clauses and commitments

*Finance:*
Financial planning
National Insurance
Banking
Financial records and documentation
Accountants

*Job interviews:*
Auditions – closed calls, open calls, interviews
Job application tools:
CV/portfolio, e.g. resume, CV, show reel, portfolio, photos, online profile

Performing arts workforce:
Diversity of the performing arts industry
Areas of imbalance relevant to career aims and specialist area

LO2 Analyse the importance of health, safety and wellbeing within the workplace and own career development

Management of health and wellbeing:
Mental health
Eating disorders
Stamina fitness
Nutrition
Hydration
Injury prevention and management
Healthy working environment
Team building and support
Mentoring
Associations and organisations

Management of Health and Safety:
Legislation
Risk assessment
First aid
Legal responsibilities
Associations and organisations

Professional health and wellbeing development:
Fitness levels and management
Nutrition management
Mental health awareness and management
LO3  Review the sustainability of a career in the performing arts industry and strategies to support long-term employability

*Professional development:*
Keeping up with industry trends
Skills updating in response to industry need
Technological advances and changes
Legislation changes
Fitness levels

*‘Resting’:*
Part-time work
Flexibility
Contract length
Legal rights
Clauses and commitments

*Finance:*
Financial planning and budgeting
Accountants for the performing arts industry

*Agents:*
How to access agents
Working with agents
Contractual obligations

*Associations and organisations:*
Unions and professional memberships relevant to specialist area
LO4 **Create a marketing strategy that will enhance and prolong the chosen career**

*Marketing:*
- Promoting yourself
- Creating a ‘buzz’
- Difference between offline and online promotion
- Marketing management
- Role of agent in promotion
- Marketing costs

*‘Offline’ marketing activities:*
- Networking
- Professional etiquette
- Live performances and showcases CV/portfolio: photos, CV/resume, show reel

*‘Online’ marketing activities:*
- Internet marketing
- Social media

*CV/portfolio:*
- Photos
- CV/resume
- Show reel

Emerging technology and future developments
- Branding relevance ease of use range of activities to match audience
- Portfolios: Physical and/or digital
Career goals:
Career target
Intended audience
Aims and objectives
Personal development
Future-proofing own brand and product

Audience:
Audience research
Aims and objectives
Targets
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Analyse own career goal and accessibility to employment of chosen role</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Analyse own career goal within the wider performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the workforce diversity of own specific career goal and how this may impact on own accessibility routes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse the importance of health, safety and wellbeing within the workplace and own career development</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Discuss the barriers to accessibility within the performing arts industry and specific to your role</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse the health, safety and wellbeing issues in the wider performing arts industry using specific examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Review the sustainability of a career in the performing arts industry and strategies to support long-term employability</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse the risks associated with sustaining health and wellbeing in a career in the performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically analyse why keeping up with industry trends is essential to long-term employability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Create a marketing strategy that will enhance and prolong the chosen career</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Analyse own health and wellbeing strategies relevant to own career development</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the development of offline and online marketing activities in the performing arts industry and how they could affect own marketing strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Assess the accessibility of your career goal</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Discuss own areas for development based on an analysis with a clear improvement/maintenance plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 46: Auditioning
Unit 63: Working in Creative Education.
Unit 34: Jazz Dance 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>T/616/1944</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit is a progression from Level 4 Jazz and, as such, will further develop students in relation to technical acquisition and strength. It will involve assessed performance, class assessments and a presentation which will demonstrate students' ability to compare different innovators within the field of jazz as a dance genre and show how their work has influenced the genre as it currently stands.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to execute the required content vocabulary in a range of combinations, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry with secure jazz technique. Students will also have a greater knowledge of the different jazz techniques created by innovators and how this can assist their work.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary, as directed, in complex combinations within class and performance

2. Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique

3. Interpret feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction

4. Assess different jazz techniques created by innovators during the development of jazz as a dance genre.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary as directed in complex combinations within class and performance

- A safe warm-up and cool-down
- Accurate placing and alignment within all technical requirements
- Core strengthening work
- Flexibility work
- Footwork
- Jazz ports de bras and adage
- Isolations
- Contractions
- Travelling steps using a low centre of gravity
- Turns
- Corner work
- Choreographic sequences

LO2 Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry and musicality and secure technique

Technique:
- Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
- Interpret direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
- Use visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
- Undertake mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
- Combine all the above skills to create a secure technical base
Musicality:
Consideration of the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpret different types of music to enhance performance
Count rhythm, considering dynamics, offbeats and syncopation in order to bring
light and shade to the choreography

Artistry:
Interpret performance – either given by the choreographer/teacher or via own
ideas
Explore and apply appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer
or personal choice
Create engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the
work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO3 Interpret feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction

Learn how feedback is applied and processed

Practise applying feedback to all steps, both when given and when you remember
what you have learned in order to apply it yourself without direction

Explore how you identify when you are doing something wrong and how you help
yourself correct it, using mirrors, recordings, and recording your learning in your
reflective journal to steer your exploration

Critically analyse immediate feedback so you can apply it to technical skills already
achieved in order to progress
LO4 Assess different jazz techniques created by innovators during the development of jazz as a dance genre

Innovators within the genre, e.g.:
Katherine Dunham
Jack Cole
Lester Horton
Luigi
Charles ‘Cholly’ Atkins
Matt Mattox
Gus Giordano
Bob Fosse
Frank Hatchett
Joe Tremaine
Rosie Perez
Mia Michaels
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required content vocabulary, as directed, in complex combinations within class and performance</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate ability to perform all required content and vocabulary with the class with assurance</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Pick up and perform all work with confidence, demonstrating the required content and vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate ability to perform all required vocabulary within the class</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with little direction and practice time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with direction and practice time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry and musicality and secure technique</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music that informs the dynamics of your performance</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Perform with an innate musicality and artistry, underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Interpret and perform all required content and vocabulary musically and with artistic flair</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique at all times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate application of the required technique to your work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Interpret feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate retention and application of feedback after direction at speed and with understanding</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate appropriate reflective practice that is applied at speed and with consistent technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Illustrate the application of all feedback offered, both to the class and personally</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Respond to corrections with the technical skills, as directed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Assess jazz techniques created by innovators during the development of jazz as a dance genre</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Analyse a diverse range of jazz techniques and how they relate to current trends</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the historical development of jazz as a dance genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Assess the key innovators in jazz dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Review a range of jazz techniques created by innovators</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1*
*Unit 4: Ballet 1*
*Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1*
*Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1*
*Unit 9: Choreography 1*
*Unit 11: Dance for Camera*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 39: Dance for Musical Theatre*
*Unit 47: Choreography 2.*
**Unit 35: Ballet 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>A/616/1945</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

This unit is a progression from the Level 4 unit, *Unit 4: Ballet*, and, as such, will further develop students in relation to technical acquisition and the development of the artistry required in performance.

Artistry and musicality are areas further explored in this unit. Students will investigate how they apply to the discipline of ballet in practical application. Through class work and performance, students will develop secure technique, exploring appropriate vocabulary in complex enchaînements.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations and enchaînements, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry with secure ballet technique. Students will also have a deeper understanding of the ‘how to’ of ballet and will be able to self-correct.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required vocabulary as directed in complex enchaînements within class and performance
2. Interpret feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction
3. Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique
4. Assess the development of own processes in training to work within the discipline of ballet.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required vocabulary as directed in complex enchaînements within class and performance

At the barre

Pliés:
Demi and grand pliés in all positions, incorporating ports de bras forward, back, sideways and circular and rises and balances in closed and open positions on demi-pointe

Tendus:
In all positions, on straight legs and en fondu, closing in demi plié, repeated, combined with glissés and from 1st, 3rd or 5th

Glissés:
En croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere, piqué, en cloche, combined with tendus – from 1st, 3rd or 5th position

Rond des jambes:
En dehors and en dedans à terre and en l'air, incorporating ports de bras and balances in all positions, retiré and on one leg on a flat foot and demi-pointe, combined with battement fondu

Battement fondu:
À terre and en l'air, en croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere – from 5th position, combine with ronds de jambes en l'air

Adage:
Développés en croix from 3rd or 5th, with fondu on extension, demi and grand rond de jambes en l'air, pivots to the barre, balances in open positions on the flat foot and on demi-pointe, ports de bras in closed and open position on the flat foot and on demi-pointe

Grand battement:
En croix and/or repeated in devant, seconde and derriere on the flat foot and on demi pointe, combined with battements en cloche
**Battements en cloche:**
Devant and derrière in arabesque and attitude, combined with grand battements

**Stretch:**
Ballet-related stretching exercises – all areas of the body

**In the Centre**

**Centre practice:**
Demi and full pliés in 1st and 2nd, tendus en croix using all directions, battement glissé, ronds de jambe and battement fondu à terre

**Ports de bras:**
Forward, sideways, backwards and circular in open and closed positions, chassés and pas de bourrées, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 4th crossed and 5th and 1st, 2nd and 3rd arabesque positions of the arms, combined with adage

**Adage:**
Développé devant and à la seconde, 1st, 2nd and 3rd arabesque en l’air, promenade and pivots in an en l’air position, utilising chassés, glissades, pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements, combined with ports de bras

**Pirouettes:**
Single and double pirouette from 4th and 5th position to right and left
Chaîné, pose and emboîté turns to left and right (females)
Chaînés to left and right and turns in second to strongest side (males)

**Petit allegro:**
Échappé sauté to 2nd and en croix, using all directions, sautés in 1st, soubresauts, changements facing en face and with ¼ and ½ turn, utilising chassés, glissades, and pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements

**Allegro:**
Assemble, jeté devant and derrière, sissone over, under, devant, derrière, en avant, en arrière, petit sissone devant, derrière, over and under, utilising chassés, poses, temps leves, glissades, and pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements

**Batterie:**
Entrechat, changement battu, entrechat trois devant and derrière, échappé battu ouvert and ferme with and without changing
Grand allegro:
Grand jeté en tournant, fouetté sauté, demi and full contretemps, utilising chassés, glissades, runs, temps levés, pas de bourrées as required to create enchaînements

LO2 Apply feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction

Learn how feedback applies to you and how you process it by exploring your learning style and identifying what you do with feedback in order to make it work for you

Practise applying feedback to all steps, both when given and when you remember what you have learned in order to apply it yourself without direction

Explore how you identify when you are doing something wrong and how you help yourself correct it, using mirrors, recordings, and recording your learning in your reflective journal to steer your exploration

Critically analyse immediate feedback so you can apply it to technical skills already achieved in order to progress

LO3 Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique

Technique:
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpret direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Use visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Undertake mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combine all the above skills to create a secure technical base

Musicality:
Consider the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpret different types of music to enhance performance
Count rhythm, considering dynamics, offbeats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography
Artistry:
Interpret performance – either given by the choreographer/teacher or via own ideas
Explore and apply appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Create engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

**LO4 Assess the development of own processes in training to work within the discipline of ballet**

*Critically analyse the ‘how to’ of ballet in order to process how the body works within ballet using the following routes to steer and inform analysis:*

Your own understanding of how you are processing information given in class into a physical process within your body
Research via journals, books, and online blogs, films and tutorials (be selective and questioning of that which you find online)
Observe dancers, e.g. peers, teachers and professional dancers in class and performance

*Investigate how you can apply the knowledge gained from critical analysis this to your learning via practice, both mental imaging and physical practice*

*Identify any new processes implemented as a result of your analysis and how this has improved your technique*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate required vocabulary as directed in complex enchaînements within class and performance</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate ability to perform required vocabulary with the class with assurance</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Pick up and perform all work with confidence, demonstrating an implicit knowledge of the required vocabulary and a minimal need for direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate ability to perform all required vocabulary within the class</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with no practice time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen enchaînements with direction and practice time</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate the retention of feedback after direction with speed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Interpret feedback, as directed, and evidence self-correction</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate the application of self-directed correction which assists steps and progress</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate self-evaluation and correction while processing and implementing all offered feedback correctly and immediately without needing reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Evidence the application of all feedback offered, both to the class and self</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the ability to self-correct the required technique to work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the ability to self-correct the required technique to work</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music that informs the dynamics of your performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the application of the required technique to your work</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform with innate musicality and artistry which is underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Interpret and perform all required vocabulary musically and with artistic flair</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Demonstrate secure technique at all times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Assess the development of own processes in training to work within the discipline of ballet</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse technical, physical, mental and artistic skill development required for employment as a ballet dancer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the development of own processes in developing skills as a ballet dancer</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Analyse the importance of processing and applying corrections in the discipline of ballet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Assess ballet as a discipline and the technical, physical and mental skills required to effectively train for future employment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 47: Choreography 2.
Unit 36: Contemporary Dance 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1946</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The demands on today's contemporary dancer are greater than ever before; and a need for robust training even more appropriate. Dancers in Matthew Bourne's groundbreaking company perform eight shows a week for months on end. More and more, contemporary dancers will also perform in music videos and on tour with music acts in addition to a teaching schedule, professional development, personal fitness regime in the shape of pilates, weight training and/or yoga.

The aim of this unit is to give students a more intense exploration of contemporary dance technique and culture, achieving a degree of mastery over their creativity, stronger identification as a unique artist and ownership over quality of movement. They will focus on strengthening their bodies through dance combinations, learning modern dance language and contemporary dance technique, and so develop an even stronger relationship to musicality and creativity.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use the required contemporary dance language to develop and maintain a robust technical foundation to use in the professional world of dance. They will be able to pick up and retain combinations of the required technique. An approach to research and delivery of said research will also be covered.

Students will develop other skills such as communication, research, reasoning and interpretation, recall, adaptation, which are all critical for gaining employment.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Develop required technical skills, as directed in lessons, using the required dance language for the genre
2. Perform the required dance language with technique, musicality and creativity
3. Deliver a class using required technique from lessons and understanding of dance language for the genre as retained from lessons
4. Describe the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to your technique and artistry.
Essential Content

LO1 Develop required technical skills, as directed in lessons, using the required dance language for the genre

The role of contemporary dance technique:
How and why the Graham technique was born
Why Cunningham developed his own technique
Why they are still relevant today

Implementation of contemporary dance technique:
Graham
Cunningham
Limon
Horton
Release
Contact

Implementation of contemporary dance combinations:
Experimentation with Cunningham-based random principles
Advanced Graham-based floor work and travelling sequence
Advanced tendu, plié, back stretches, turns, adage, triplets, leaps, falls within the relevant style

Identify contemporary dance language:
E.g. Falls
Greetings
Pitches
Contractions
Pleadings
Dynamics
Centre
Reach
Leaps
Jumps
Extensions

*Overview of contemporary dance-making:*
From Denishawn through to Michael Clark
Alvin Ailey through to Matthew Bourne

**LO2** Perform the required dance language with technique, musicality and creativity

*The role of performance in contemporary dance*

*Implementation of technique, musicality and creativity*

*Overview of the unique artist voice:*
How to inject an individual personality into own practice

*Consider expression within the use of contemporary dance performance:*
e.g. the work of Lea Anderson (The Cholmondeleys and The Featherstonehaughs)
Philip Decouflé
Rosas
Akram Khan
Michael Clark
Matthew Bourne
LO3 Deliver a class using required technique from lessons and dance language for the genre as retained from lessons

Research and plan a contemporary dance class:
To last one hour and be based on any of the main techniques listed above

Be able to provide a Scheme of Work

Acknowledge role of feedback and critical evaluation within a dance class

LO4 Describe the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to your technique and artistry

Identify elements of the current contemporary dance scene

Determining requirements of current trends within the industry

Consideration of technique and artistry within the current contemporary dance scene
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Develop required technical skills, as directed in lessons, using the required dance language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Develop required technical skills, using the required dance language with confidence, an embodied knowledge of the required dance language, evidence of self-reflection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Develop required technical skills as directed in lessons</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Develop required technical skills, using the required dance language for the genre with quality of movement and retention of feedback in lessons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the required dance language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Apply self-correction skills as response to feedback in lessons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Perform the required dance language with technique, musicality and creativity</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform the required dance language with technique, musicality and creativity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a dynamic relationship with the music which complements the performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Deliver a class using required technique from lessons and dance language for the genre as retained from lessons</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate dance language and selected technique for the genre in an intuitive way with an experimental and self-created approach through the delivery of a class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Plan a class to demonstrate technique and dance language as retained in lessons</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Deliver class, using required technique from lessons, dance language for the genre as retained from lessons in an intuitive way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Deliver own class, using required technique from lessons and dance language for the genre as retained from lessons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Discuss the current evolution of contemporary dance and how this relates to your technique and artistry</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Analyse different trends in contemporary dance technique and culture</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse a diverse range of different approaches to contemporary dance culture and technique and how you will utilise your findings in your own practice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


DVDs


Websites

www.theguardian.com
The Guardian
Michael Clark: ‘I still make the dance work on my own body first’
Article

www.theguardian.com
The Guardian
Step-by-step guide to dance: Yvonne Rainer
Article

www.whatsonstage.com
What’s on Stage
Matthew Bourne: ‘I see myself as a man of the theatre’
Article

Vimeo.com
Vimeo
Compagnie DCA/Philippe Decouflé
Video

Youtube.com
YouTube
Elvis legs.mov
Video

Youtube.com
YouTube
Les Ballets C de la B (Bélgica)|BIENAL SESC DE DANÇA 2011 – SANTOS – SP
Video

Youtube.com
YouTube
Michael Clark choreography Dance 1
Video
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1*
*Unit 9: Choreography 1*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 41: Contact Improvisation*
*Unit 42: Physical Theatre*
*Unit 47: Choreography 2.*
Unit 37: Commercial Dance 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/1947</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit is a progression from Level 4 Commercial Dance and, as such, will further develop students in relation to technical acquisition, style, musicality and strength. It will involve assessed performance, class assessments and a presentation which will demonstrate students’ ability to compare different innovators within the field of commercial dance as a dance genre and show how their work has influenced the genre as it currently stands. It will also allow students to consider the employment opportunities that commercial dance can offer.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to execute the required content and vocabulary in a range of combinations, incorporating and demonstrating musicality and artistry with secure commercial dance technique. Students will also be more aware of specific innovators within the field and the job opportunities that may arise for commercial dancers.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary as directed in complex combinations within class and performance

2. Interpret feedback as directed and evidence self-correction to enhance technical skills

3. Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique

4. Evaluate the development of commercial dance and potential employment opportunities.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required content and vocabulary as directed in complex combinations within class and performance

A safe warm-up and cool-down vocabulary
Core strengthening work
Secure technique with accurate placing and alignment within all styles
The movement vocabulary used within commercial dance, e.g. isolations, contractions and co-ordination
The physicality needed to dance with sharpness and fluidity as required
Using jazz and other dance techniques within commercial dance
Choreographic sequences

LO2 Interpret feedback as directed and evidence self-correction to enhance technical skills

Learn how feedback applies to you and how you process it by exploring your learning style and identifying what you do with feedback in order to make it work for you
Practise applying feedback to all steps, both when given and when you remember what you have learned in order to apply it yourself without direction
Explore how you identify when you are doing something wrong and how you help yourself correct it, using mirrors, recordings, and recording your learning in your reflective journal to steer your exploration
Critically analyse immediate feedback so you can apply it to technical skills already achieved in order to progress

LO3 Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique

Technique:
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpret direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Use visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Undertake mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills
Combine all the above skills to create secure a technical base

*Musicality:*
Consider the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music
Interpret different types of music to enhance performance
Count rhythm, considering dynamics, offbeats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography

*Artistry:*
Interpret performance – either given by the choreographer/teacher or via own ideas
Explore and apply appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Create engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

**LO4** **Evaluate the development of commercial dance and potential employment opportunities**

*Conception and development of commercial dance*

*Techniques/styles:*
E.g. Locking
Popping
Voguing
Breakdancing
Street dance
Bboys
Krumpling
Hip-hop
House
Techno
Tutting
Waacking
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required content vocabulary for the unit in complex combinations within class and performance</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate ability to perform required vocabulary, as directed, within the class</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrating an embodied knowledge of the required content, as directed, and vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform unseen combinations with direction</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate required content and vocabulary, as directed with the class, with assurance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Interpret feedback as directed in lessons to enhance technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Evidence the application of all feedback offered, both to the class and personally</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate retention of corrections while processing and implementing all offered feedback correctly and immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate secure technique at all times</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Evidence retention of, processing and implementation of feedback after direction at speed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Produce work in class and performance that incorporates artistry, musicality and secure technique</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Interpret and perform all required content and vocabulary, as directed, musically and with artistic flair</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform with innate musicality and artistry which is underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate application of secure technique, as directed, in class and performance</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music that informs the dynamics of own performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the development of commercial dance and potential employment opportunities</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate the conception and development of commercial dance as a genre</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the development of commercial dance and how this work informs your employability within the dance industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse a wide range of job opportunities for commercial dancers in the current industry and their accessibility</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate a wide and diverse range of influences that have shaped commercial dance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1*

*Unit 9: Choreography 1*

*Unit 11: Dance for Camera*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 47: Choreography 2.*
Unit 38: Tap 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/616/1948</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit has been created in order to build on skills and learning acquired during the Level 4 units, *Unit 7: Tap* and *Unit 8: American Tap* and, as such, contains more challenging vocabulary which is to be performed in complex combinations.

Technical and artistic development remain at the forefront of the rationale for the content, with an additional choreographic element which has been designed to allow creativity and imagination and to further develop understanding of the importance of musicality and rhythm within tap.

More in-depth research is required which will heighten students’ understanding of how tap is learned and which may assist them as they progress within their career as a potential teacher or choreographer.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to execute the required vocabulary in unset combinations, incorporating and demonstrating rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance. Students will also have a broader knowledge of how learners learn, and how to create a choreographed solo for themselves.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required vocabulary, as directed, in class
2. Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills
3. Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance
4. Analyse how different dancers learn to tap dance and how this may impact on classes and rehearsals.
Essential Content

LO1 Demonstrate the required vocabulary, as directed, in class

All steps covered in Level 4, danced in complex combinations and the following – but not exclusively:

Time steps – single, double and triple pick-up time steps and break, free time steps, half breaks (facing front and turning), with tacit, starting on 8 and 1

Consecutive pull backs on the flat foot or on the balls of the feet, depending on ability

Wings from foot to foot

Close work, e.g. 3- and 4-beat paddles (paradiddles), paddle breaks, and close work combinations which can be danced at speed

5- and 6-beat cramp rolls

6- and 7-beat riffs

Consecutive shuffle pick-up changes travelling backwards

Maxie Ford

Suzie Q

Buffalos

Work on rhythm must be evidenced in assessment:

This may be done by giving an unseen rhythm to the class so they can replicate it by either clapping, marking, or choreographing it. Students may also be asked to count the steps they are working on both in class and assessment

Combinations of the above are to be included in all assessments:

It is not sufficient to simply perform the above steps in isolation. Class assessment work should consist of a balanced class, e.g. demonstration of the more challenging technical steps and combinations using the steps above as dance sequences. Sequences may be choreographed using tacit and cross-phrasing
LO2 **Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills**

*Learn how feedback applies to you and how you process it by exploring your learning style and identifying what you do with feedback in order to make it work for you*

*Practise applying feedback to all steps, both when given and when you remember what you have learned in order to apply it yourself without direction*

*Explore how you identify when you are doing something wrong and how you help yourself correct it, using mirrors, recordings, and recording your learning in your reflective journal to steer your exploration*

*Critically analyse immediate feedback so you can apply it to technical skills already achieved in order to progress*

LO3 **Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance**

*Technique:*

Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles

Interpret direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence

Use visual skills to replicate shapes and movements

Use aural skills to interpret light, shade and tone

Undertake mental practice for success imaging and enhancement of danced skills

Combine all the above skills to create secure a technical base

*Musicality:*

Consider the phrasing of all work given, both in choreography and music

Interpret different types of music to enhance performance

Count rhythm, considering dynamics, off beats and syncopation in order to bring light and shade to the choreography
Artistry:
Interpret performance – either given by the choreographer/teacher or via own ideas
Explore and apply appropriate style, either via the request of the choreographer or personal choice
Create engaging and dynamic energy within performance by approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

LO4 Analyse how different learners learn to tap dance and how this may impact classes and rehearsals

Observation of peers in class
Questioning peers and teachers
Reflecting on how you learn
Researching learning styles

Investigate how different learners react to and implement feedback using the following to inform your learning:
Observation of peers in class
Questioning peers and teachers
Reflecting on how you learn

Investigate how you could apply your learning to how you might approach teaching or choreographing:
Analyse how your understanding of how learners learn can assist you when working with dancers with different learning styles
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required vocabulary, as directed, in class</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary, as directed, within the class as a solo performer</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate vocabulary, technique and effective dynamics in class, as directed, with security, musicality and confidence as a soloist and as part of an ensemble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary, as directed, within the class as part of an ensemble</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate all required vocabulary with the class with assurance, secure technique and dynamics as a solo performer and as part of an ensemble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Interpret feedback, as directed in lessons, to enhance technical skills</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Demonstrate the application of feedback, as directed in class</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate all required technical skills with evidence of retention of feedback and self-reflection and correction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the application of all required technical skills, as directed in class</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate the retention of feedback in class, after direction, through technical skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Perform the required vocabulary in set and unseen combinations with rhythm, control, tone, musicality, style and performance</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Perform vocabulary, as directed, rhythmically, dynamically and with musicality</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform vocabulary with musicality and artistry, underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate secure technique when performing combinations with stylistic awareness</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate a relationship with the music which complements the rhythm and dynamics of the required vocabulary appropriate to style</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse how different learners learn to tap dance and how this may impact classes and rehearsals</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Analyse different learning styles and approaches in context of a class and rehearsal</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the importance of communication and musicality in a class and rehearsal and the potential impact on final performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse the importance of teamwork and musicality in a tap class, rehearsal and performance</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse the impact of poor communication skills and musicality in a tap performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry

Unit 2: Professional Development

Unit 7: Tap 1

Unit 8: American Tap

Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry.
Unit 39: Dance for Musical Theatre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1949</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Performing in a musical requires a combination of acting, singing and dance skills. However, there are many dance genres which can be incorporated into a musical and, as such, this unit has been developed to allow for the study and exploration of the wide range of dance genres that can be used in musical theatre.

This unit has been designed to follow on from the Level 4 unit, Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1. It will allow students to explore various musical theatre styles and the associated techniques in class before developing those techniques and applying them in a performance.

Students will explore a wide and diverse range of musical theatre styles used in both film and theatre, key innovators and choreographers from musical theatre history. Students will also explore their techniques and skills in successfully communicating the style intentions.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to pick up and perform unseen routines in a variety of musical theatre styles. The required research will enhance knowledge of different musicals and the dance styles used.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore a wide range of musical theatre dance styles in class, as directed
2. Demonstrate the relevant technique for a wide range of musical theatre dance styles, in class, as directed
3. Perform a range of musical theatre dance styles, as directed, with secure technique
4. Evaluate a wide and diverse range of musical theatre dance styles.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore a wide range of musical theatre dance styles in class, as directed

Practical, class-based exploration of musical theatre dance technique, relevant to style and genre

Practical, class-based exploration of a wide variety of influencers and innovators

Practical, class-based exploration of a wide and diverse range of film and stage musical theatre choreographers

LO2 Demonstrate the relevant technique for a wide range of musical theatre dance styles, in class, as directed

Application and retention of relevant techniques as explored above, in class, to prepare for performance, e.g.:

Visual skills to replicate shapes and movements
Interpretation of performance style given by the choreographer

Creating engaging and dynamic energy within a performance:
Approaching the work with the correct dynamics, phrasing, musicality, technique and artistic flair

Communication:
Choreographic intentions and stylistic intentions – in class

LO3 Perform a range of musical theatre dance styles, as directed, with secure technique

Application of relevant techniques, as explored in class, in a performance:
Repetition of movement in order to create movement pathways connecting the brain to the muscles
Interpreting direction and instruction in order to appropriate the correct movement or sequence
Using visual skills to replicate shapes and movements

Communication: choreographic intentions and stylistic intentions in performance
LO4 Evaluate a wide and diverse range of musical theatre dance styles

Wide and diverse range of musicals: jukebox musicals, rock opera, breakthrough musicals, Broadway ‘compilation’ musicals, current musicals

Wide range of musical film

Wide and diverse range of musical theatre choreographers

Wide and diverse range of musical theatre composers/lyricists
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore a wide range of musical theatre dance styles in class, as directed</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Apply the findings of an evaluation of the technical and stylistic requirements of a range of musical theatre dance styles, in class</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate, in class, a diverse range of musical theatre dance styles, with consistent confidence, relevant technique and effective communication of intentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the techniques required for a wide range of musical theatre dance styles, in class</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the techniques required to effectively communicate stylistic intentions, in a range of styles, in class</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Demonstrate the application of the relevant technique to the choreographic styles, as directed, in class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Demonstrate the application of the relevant technique to the choreographic styles, as directed, in class</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the choreography, as directed, with assurance and effective communication of stylistic intentions</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Apply the relevant technique, as directed in class, securely, with confidence and clear stylistic nuances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate the relevant technique for a wide range of musical theatre dance styles, in class, as directed</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Perform a diverse range of musical theatre dance styles, with consistent confidence, relevant technique, effective communication of intentions and assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Demonstrate the application of the relevant technique to the choreographic styles, as directed, in a performance</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate the application of the relevant technique to all given choreography with secure and relevant technique at all times and effective communication of intentions through performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Perform a range of musical theatre styles with secure technique</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate a wide and diverse range of musical theatre dance styles</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically analyse a diverse range of key innovative musical theatre choreographers that have influenced the genre as it stands today</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate a wide and diverse range of musical theatre dance styles</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse a diverse range of musical theatre choreographers who have influenced the genre, including their body of work as well as their style</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explore a wide range of influential musical theatre choreographers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks
LONG, R.E. (2001) Broadway, the Golden Years: Jerome Robbins and the Great Choreographer-Directors, 1940 to the Present. London: Continuum-3PL.

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 3: Jazz Dance 1
Unit 4: Ballet 1
Unit 5: Contemporary Dance 1
Unit 6: Commercial Dance 1
Unit 7: Tap 1
Unit 8: American Tap
Unit 9: Choreography 1
Unit 11: Dance for Camera.
Unit 40: Partner Work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1834</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit type</td>
<td>Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

Partner work is an advanced, dynamic form of technique and choreography, used in all genres of dance. From traditional, classical, pas de deux to leading-edge contemporary movement, from fresh hip-hop collaborations to physical theatre contortions, from high-flying circus combinations to fast-footed, old-school tap numbers, to work with a partner can bring life, emotion, joy, ecstasy, danger, virtuosity and so much more to a dance piece.

The aim of this unit is to provide students with a robust understanding of partner work in all its settings, being able to properly utilise partner work when choreographing as well as participating at an advanced level. Students will be able to discover and establish their own bodies as a tool with which to collaborate with others, creating original dance passages, unique stylistic ideas, and imaginative, physical dance rooted in skills and technique.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use the learned skills to develop and maintain a career in the world of professional dance. They will able to talk about partner work with a strong degree of authority and be able to utilise this knowledge in their own practice, whether as a choreographer and/or a dancer. Students will also develop other skills such as collaboration, communication, interpretation, adaptation, thoughtfulness, mindfulness, which are all crucial for employment, building on transferable skills and the development of their own professional practice.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Develop the required partnering technique for the genre, as directed
2. Demonstrate required technique and apply it to partner work, as directed in lessons
3. Create an original piece based on the required partnering technique for the genre
4. Evaluate the current position of partner work within their chosen genre's professional field.
Essential Content

LO1 Develop the required partnering technique for the genre, as directed

Identify partner work language for chosen genre, e.g.:
Research and establish the correct technique and vocabulary for the chosen genre

Implementation of traditional and evolving styles, e.g.:
Look into the history of the roots of partnering and how it has developed over the years

Overview of the historic arc of partner work

Consider individualism within the use of partner work

LO2 Demonstrate required technique and apply it to partner work, as directed in lessons

The role of technique and how it relates to partner work, e.g.:
Classical ballet pas de deux, presage
Contemporary-based throws and falls
Contact-based collisions
Release-based intuition

Overview of various approaches to technique, e.g.:
Classical ballet pas de deux
Contemporary dance trust exercises
Jazz dance/show dance partner combinations
Physical theatre gesture-based partnering
Implementation of technique as applied to partner work
**LO3** Create **original piece based on the required partnering technique for the genre**

*Research and plan an original partner-based dance work: e.g.:

Create ideas board/journal in planning work, citing sources of inspiration behind the piece

Be able to provide research notes and inspiration board

Acknowledge importance of feedback when developing ideas*

**LO4** Evaluate the **current position of partner work within their chosen genre's professional field**

*Identify elements of partner work in today's dance scene, e.g.:

Which choreographers employ partnering as a motif of their style

Which choreographers tend not to stage partner work

Which choreographers present something truly contemporary

Which continue to rely on traditional approaches

Determining use of partner work in own practice

Consideration of applied technique in the field of partner work*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Develop the required partnering technique for the genre, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the required partnering language, relevant to genre, in class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate required technique and apply it to partner work, as directed in lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate relevant dance language, appropriate to genre, in class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Create an original piece based on the required partnering technique for the genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Apply the relevant dance language to communicate intentions of an original piece based on the required partnering technique for the genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the current position of partner work within their chosen genre’s professional field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse current and historic trends within partner work and how these trends may impact on own work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry.*
Unit 41: Contact Improvisation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/616/1951</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The roots of Contact Improvisation are attributed to dancer and choreographer Steve Paxton. The class structure is simultaneously a form of meditation, practised standing, where attention is paid to small postural adjustments and micro-weight transfers. This is then followed, during rehearsal time, by rolls, collisions, and jumps in the air. Steve Paxton utilised his training in modern dance with the Cunningham company and José Limón as well as his background in Aikido and gymnastics.

The aim of this unit is to give students a more intense exploration of contemporary dance technique, focusing specifically on Contact Improvisation. The unit will support students in how to achieve command of their creativity, establishing a multidimensional identification as a unique artist and providing ownership and freedom over quality of movement. They will practise working their bodies through alternative approaches, creating their own dance language and contemporary dance technique, and will develop an even stronger relationship to musicality and originality.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use the required dance language to develop and maintain a robust artistic foundation to use in the professional world of dance. Students will develop other skills such as communication, research, reasoning and interpretation, recall and adaptation, all of which are all critical for gaining employment.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Develop understanding of the required dance language for the genre
2. Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons
3. Perform the required dance language with originality, musicality and creativity
4. Evaluate understanding of the current evolution of Contact Improvisation/New Dance.
Essential Content

LO1 Develop understanding of the required dance language for the genre

*The role of contact improvisation technique, e.g.:

Beginning class with meditation
Micro-transfers of weight
Finding centre
Introduction of metaphysical ideas relating to this approach
Postural adjustments, leading to rolls, collisions, moving across the floor
Air-based work
Rehearsal-based work at the end of class

*Overview of various approaches and schools of thought, e.g.:

How Steve Paxton used his background in the Cunningham company and gymnastics to create this ground-breaking approach
Who led on from his inception and how

*Implementation of contact improvisation technique

LO2 Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons

*Identify contact improvisation as a dance language, e.g.:

Multi-dimensional approach, what it draws from other disciplines
What is it about this approach that makes it ‘Contact Improvisation’ or ‘New Dance’?

*Implementation of contact improvisation combinations

*Overview of contact improvisation dance-making

*Acknowledge role of feedback and critical evaluation within a rehearsal setting
LO3 Perform the required dance language with originality, musicality and creativity

The role of performance in contact improvisation

Implementation of originality, musicality and creativity

Consider the multi-dimensional unique artist voice

Consider unique approaches within the use of contact improvisation performance

LO4 Evaluate understanding of the current evolution of Contact Improvisation/New Dance

Identify elements of the current contact improvisation/new dance scene:
Determining requirements of current trends within the industry
Consideration of technique and artistry within the current contact improvisation/new dance scene
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Develop understanding of the required dance language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Develop the required language for the genre, with individual flair, a maturity of approach, an embodied knowledge of the required dance language and consistent technique maintained throughout</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Develop the required language for the genre, with individual flair, a maturity of approach, an embodied knowledge of the required dance language and consistent technique maintained throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the required technical language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Develop the required dance language for the genre with quality of movement and consistent technique</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate required technique, as retained in lessons, with strong evidence of ownership, musicality and confidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Demonstrate required technique and apply it to work, as directed in lessons</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply the required dance language for the genre with quality of movement and consistent technique</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Perform required technique, as retained in lessons, with strong evidence of ownership, musicality, clear stylistic choices and an unmistakable identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Demonstrate required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate required technique, as retained in lessons, and apply it to work, with musicality and assurance in class</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse a diverse range of approaches to Contact Improvisation and New Dance culture and technique and how findings will be utilised in own practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Perform the required dance language with originality, musicality and creativity</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Perform the required techniques with musicality, creativity and correct application of dance language</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Perform required technique, as retained in lessons, and apply it to work, with musicality and assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the current evolution of Contact Improvisation/New Dance</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Evaluate the current evolution of Contact Improvisation/New Dance</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse a range of trends in contact improvisation and the impact on new dance technique and culture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

- contactquarterly.com
  - Contact Quarterly
  - Contact Improvisation
  - General reference

- Youtube.com
  - Contact Improvisation: An intuitive, non-verbal and intimate dialogue: Itay Yatuv at TEDxBGU
  - Video

- Youtube.com
  - Core connection/sharing balance in Contact Improvisation
  - Video

- Youtube.com
  - Steve Paxton: Material for the spine
  - Video

- Youtube.com
  - Steve Paxton talking dance
  - Video
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 36: Contemporary Dance 2
Unit 42: Physical Theatre
Unit 47: Choreography 2.
Unit 42: Physical Theatre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>M/616/1960</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Physical theatre is, at least in many ways, an evolutionary strand of contemporary dance, mime, traditional acting and performance art. Lloyd Newson and his truly groundbreaking DV8 company is generally considered to have coined the term; and alongside Pina Bausch, Rosas, Les Ballets C de la B, Theatre Complicite, Frantic and Philippe Decoufle, is seen as one of the main protagonists of the genre as we know it today.

The aim of this unit is to give students a focused overview of the genre known as physical theatre: setting up an understanding of what it means, where it's headed, its triumphs and landmarks. The unit will strengthen each student's relationship with originality in movement-making, storytelling and conceptualising, crafting leading-edge work in the theatre, dance and beyond.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use the required physical theatre movement-making language to develop and maintain a strong narrative foundation to use in the professional physical theatre. They will be able to apply both movement-making skills, as directed in class, as well as combine elements of dance technique and acting skills to create a piece of original work. They will also be able to present an authoritative project about their work.

Students will develop other skills such as strength of character, confidence, self-starting, communication, research, creativity, thinking outside the box, which are all critical for gaining employment.


**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre, in class

2. Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with spontaneity and originality

3. Construct own physical theatre piece using required physical theatre/movement-making skills, storytelling and movement language for the genre

4. Evaluate the current evolution in physical theatre and how this is reflected in own work.
Essential Content

**LO1** Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre, in class

*The role of movement-making in physical theatre*
*Overview of various approaches and schools of thought*
*Implementation of contemporary movement-making technique*

**LO2** Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with spontaneity and originality

*Identify differing approaches to improvisation*
*Implement unique storytelling narratives*
*Overview of the various creating tactics for use in physical theatre*

**LO3** Construct own physical theatre piece using required physical theatre/movement-making skills, storytelling element and movement language for the genre

*The role of contemporary dance, acting and mime in physical theatre*
*Implementation of originality, intuition, spontaneity and creativity*
*Overview of the unique artist voice*
*Consider unexplored influences within the use of the contemporary skill set*

**LO4** Evaluate the current evolution in physical theatre and how this is reflected in own work

*Research and plan a physical theatre piece*
*Be able to provide a creation map and research notes*
*Create an original and unique piece of work*
*Identify elements of the current physical theatre scene*
*Determine requirements of current trends within the industry*
*Consideration of maverick thinking within the current physical theatre scene*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre, in class</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre with clear narratives and ownership of movement language, with confidence and flair</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre with clear narratives and ownership of movement language, with confidence and flair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the improvisational and storytelling element appropriate for the genre</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Demonstrate the required improvisational element, storytelling element and movement language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with spontaneity and originality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with spontaneity and originality</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with creativity, intuition, spontaneity and originality</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with a deeply intuitive creativity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Develop the required physical theatre/movement-making skills with spontaneity and originality</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Construct own physical theatre piece using required physical theatre/movement-making skills, storytelling element and dance language for the genre, as directed in lessons, in an intuitive way</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Construct own deeply mature physical theatre piece in a professionally commensurate way, expressing standards of professional-level theatre throughout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Construct own physical theatre piece using required physical theatre/movement-making skills, storytelling element and movement language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Construct own physical theatre piece using required physical theatre/movement-making skills, storytelling element</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Demonstrate the appropriate dance language for the genre through communication skills</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the current evolution in physical theatre and how this is reflected in own work</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse a wide range of approaches to the performance and creation of movement within the physical theatre culture and how you will utilise findings in own practice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Evaluate the current evolution in physical theatre and how this is reflected in own work</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate a range of trends in the current physical theatre scene and culture, with reference to relevance to own professional development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites

Dv8.co.uk
DV8
DV8 On Hold
General reference

Youtube.com
Youtube
Dead Dreams of Monochrome Men – DV8 Physical Theatre Video

Youtube.com
Youtube
Pina Bausch Cafe Müller Video

Youtube.com
Youtube
Rosas/Rosas danst Rosas Video

Youtube.com
Youtube
Simon McBurney on his theatre group, Complicite Video
Links
This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 36: Contemporary Dance 2
Unit 47: Choreography 2
Unit 40: Partner Work
Unit 41: Contact Improvisation.
Unit 43: Singing 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>A/616/1962</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit is designed to build on the work done in the Level 4 unit, Unit 13: Singing, which laid the foundations for the production of a safe, controlled, and consistent sound. In Singing 2, students will continue to work on developing and maintaining good technique, considering breath control, support and anchoring, tonal quality, precise intonation and rhythmic accuracy.

In this unit, students will be required to add layers of characterisation and acting choices to their singing in order to produce a fully-rounded performance. They will explore how to interpret text through the vehicle of song and will learn how to apply a variety of vocal qualities to their performance to aid the storytelling process. The technique developed during the Singing unit 16 at Level 4 will give students the opportunity to allow the narrative to drive the vocal choices they make, and not be limited by their vocal technique.

At Level 4, students will have developed an understanding of the capabilities of their own voice. This knowledge will enable them to explore a variety of material at Level 5 and to source and rehearse musical numbers which suit their voice type and characteristics. By exploring a range of musical theatre songs, students will learn to further develop their technique and enhance their understanding of their own voice so that they are able to apply what they have learned in a wide range of practical situations.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Consolidate a secure, controlled, and healthy technique, including breath control, support and anchoring, tonal quality, precise intonation and rhythmic accuracy
2. Communicate text, character, and human and dramatic predicament through song
3. Demonstrate command of the vocal qualities required in order to perform pieces from a range of genres in musical theatre, as directed
4. Perform repertoire which suits own vocal range and characteristics.
Essential Content

LO1 **Consolidate a secure, controlled, and healthy technique, including breath control, support and anchoring, tonal quality, precise intonation and rhythmic accuracy**

*Continue to develop technical competence and increase consistency, e.g.:

Score reading
More complex melody lines
Increased speed of study

*Convey an understanding of the relationship between speech patterns and rhythms and song*

*Sing and sustain a technically secure melodic line while dancing/moving*

LO2 **Communicate text, character, and human and dramatic predicament through song**

*Explore the text of a song and potential approaches to text in the integration of singing and acting*

*Discover the character and the journey of the narrative so there is a true understanding of storytelling and character input within a song*

*Explore ways to express a clear and honest approach to a character’s circumstances, intention and action*

*Learn how to work freely in given circumstances, sustaining a coherent line of action with spontaneity*
LO3 Demonstrate command of the vocal qualities required in order to effectively perform pieces from a range of genres in musical theatre, as directed.

*Develop the ability to recognise and recreate the primary vocal qualities used in musical theatre (speech quality, cry/sob, twang, opera, falsetto, and belt)*

*Identify the use of each of the vocal qualities and resonances in recorded musical theatre:*

- Understand their uses
- Evaluate their effectiveness in navigating gear changes and, most importantly, in communicating character and emotion
  *Develop confidence in using a variety of vocal qualities and resonances*

LO4 Perform repertoire which suits student’s own vocal range and characteristics

*Explore the classification of songs, connecting to voice and character types*

*Select, rehearse and perform at least four contrasting pieces from the musical theatre canon*
**Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Consolidate a secure, controlled, and healthy technique, including breath control, support and anchoring, tonal quality, precise intonation and rhythmic accuracy</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Sustain a technically secure melodic line while dancing/moving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Produce consistently a clear, steady and fully supported sound</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Demonstrate the ability to access all available registers smoothly, without detracting from the tonal quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Perform material, as directed, with rhythmic and melodic accuracy throughout</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Communicate text, character, and human and dramatic predicament through song</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Work freely in directed circumstances, sustaining a coherent line of action with spontaneity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore the text of a song and develop approaches to the integration of acting and singing</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Evaluate the journey of the song and how it fits into the wider context of the musical theatre work, communicating this effectively through song</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply vocal technique to express a character’s circumstances, intentions and actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate command of the vocal qualities required in order to effectively perform pieces from a range of genres in musical theatre, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate assurance and confidence in moving between a range of vocal qualities and resonances through the performance of a wide and diverse range of pieces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Identify the primary vocal qualities and resonances used in musical theatre</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate the ability to apply technique to negotiate difficult passages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Recreate the primary vocal qualities and resonances used in musical theatre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform repertoire which suits student's own vocal range and characteristics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Justify material which is appropriate for student's own vocal and character type from a range of musical theatre genres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Perform material which is appropriate for student's own vocal and character type from a range of musical theatre genres with effective vocal technique and communication of intentions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate vocal range and vocal type through the performance of a range of musical theatre genres, using relevant vocal techniques and characterisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Demonstrate vocal skills, character intentions and an emotional connection through the performance of a diverse range of musical theatre songs appropriate for own skills and technical ability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.britishvoiceassociation.org.uk
The British Voice Association
Voice care
Research

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 12: Singing 1
Unit 15: Ensemble Singing
Unit 16: Vocal Repertoire
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 46: Auditioning
Unit 52: Performance Project.
Unit 44: Acting 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/1970</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

Contemporary performance is dominated by the realistic tradition, whether it be through cinema, television, online or theatre. Central to this tradition is the dominance of Stanislavsky-based systems as the essential component of actor training. While it should be acknowledged that Stanislavsky was not intent on his system being solely applicable to realistic theatre, it has essentially become shackled to this genre.

The aim of this unit is to either deepen the students' understanding of Stanislavsky or Stanislavsky-based systems or develop acting skills beyond the traditional hegemony of Stanislavsky in the Western theatre tradition. Actors will be expected to embrace a range of performance styles as professionals which will require a flexible instrument which either utilises Stanislavsky or alternative practice to realise the demands of the text. The idea is to explore and experiment with techniques which challenge and expand to improve the imaginative and creative realm of the actor.

Topics in this units are necessarily general in order not to curtail choice of technique. The intention is that a technique or techniques should be explored which are appropriate to the expertise of the teacher(s) delivering the unit.

On successful completion of this unit, students will have explored a range of techniques and, in so doing, broadened their understanding of acting processes, developed their skill set and appreciated a more diverse range of theatrical practice.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore technique relevant to chosen acting style
2. Apply appropriate techniques in rehearsal to realise chosen style
3. Develop characterisation appropriate to acting style in rehearsal and performance
4. Demonstrate the application of chosen acting style in performance to present rehearsed material.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore technique relevant to chosen acting style

Explore a range of theatrical contexts to ground acting methodologies in their social, political and historical context

Identify how the practitioners’ work evolved out of and was influenced by the context of their work

Define the key features and practice of the work and technique under investigation

Compare and contrast differences in acting techniques

Investigate through practice key features of acting style

LO2 Apply appropriate techniques in rehearsal to realise chosen style

Genre and practitioner, e.g.:
Adler
Artaud
Barba
Brecht
Boal
Bogart/Viewpoints
Copeau
Gaullier Grotowski
Kogan
Lecoq
Lepage
Mcburney
Meisner
Mnouchkine

Work in a particular genre, e.g. Greek, Elizabethan/Jacobean, Restoration, Absurd, Postmodern
**Technique:**
- Compare and contrast techniques of practitioners
- Select appropriate techniques for style
- Develop processes and techniques to realise theatrical genre/practitioner’s methodology

**Development:**
- Sense of play
- Experimenting with choices and styles
- Improvising within the parameters of the script
- Études
- Making and editing choices

*Interpret and realise text within the parameters of the chosen genre*

**Personal management**
- Health and Safety
- Physically and mentally
- Time-keeping
- Sustaining focus and concentration
- Discipline
- Trust and co-operation
- LO3 Develop characterisation appropriate to acting style in rehearsal and performance

**Preparation:**
- Preparation of text
- Physical and vocal warm-up
- Identification and employment of appropriate characterisation techniques to develop role commensurate with style

**Experimentation and development:**
- Try out character choices and review and refine
- Take risks in developing material
- Conscious application of technique
Research:
Function of role
Exploration of psychology of role
Stylistic considerations in performing role
Linear or non-linear through-line of role

Technique:
Development of inner and outer characteristics
Movement and vocal qualities
Embedding key features of role, e.g. Verfremdungseffekt
Character physicality
Use of proxemics
Use of exercises and techniques to build character

Interpretation:
Define interpretation of role
Work with director to develop characterisation

Presentation:
Coherent stylistic and interpretive performance of character and text
Sustain role in performance contributing to overall meaning of performance

LO4 Demonstrate the application of chosen acting style in performance to present rehearsed material

Genre:
Present a unified and consistent performance of the chosen style
Use of vocal and physical technique to communicate text and role:

Gesture
Posture
Proxemics
Tension states
Effort actions
Vocal dynamics and range
Inflection
Projection

Embodiment:
Emotional engagement with role
Emotional range
Communication of text
Commitment to presenting role
Being in the moment

Meaning:
Theme and subject matter of material
Author's intentions
Communication of style
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore technique relevant to chosen acting style</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the context and key techniques of the genre/practitioner selected</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate the context and key techniques of the genre/practitioner selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Apply appropriate techniques in rehearsal to realise chosen style</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Apply key techniques in rehearsal proficiently to realise the style</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Apply key techniques perceptively in rehearsal, demonstrating comprehensive skill to realise the chosen style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Develop characterisation appropriate to acting style in rehearsal and performance</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Develop characterisation securely in rehearsal in preparation for an interpretation of the role in performance</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Create a full characterisation in rehearsal to interpret the role, communicating its intentions with creativity, fluency and imagination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Demonstrate the application of chosen acting style in performance to present rehearsed material</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate effective application of technique and style in performance</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Demonstrate comprehensive and perceptive application of technique to present a performance that communicates the text in a mature manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the context and key techniques of the genre/practitioner selected</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Apply key techniques in rehearsal with assurance and insight to realise the chosen style</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Develop characterisation effectively in preparation for an interpretation of the role in performance, communicating its intentions clearly and with assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate focused and assured application of technique to present a performance that communicates the text clearly and securely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 13: Acting 1
Unit 17: Acting for Camera
Unit 19: Voice and Speech
Unit 19: Movement for Actors
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 45: Immersive Theatre
Unit 48: Classical Acting
Unit 51: Dance for Actors
Unit 52: Performance Project.
Unit 45: Immersive Theatre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>D/616/1971</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Immersive theatre is a significant growth area in the performing arts industry and has become increasingly important as a way of truly engaging an audience in a production.

Although immersive theatre productions have been growing over the past few years, the concept of immersive theatre is not a new one. However, the ways of immersing an audience have developed significantly. Defining immersive theatre can be complicated and, through this unit, students will explore all necessary elements, looking at how the audience is at the forefront of the production and exploring how to engage them. For example, stimulating their senses: through sight, sound, touch, taste and even smell, can be a vital component of enabling the audience to have a uniquely personal experience.

Immersive theatre is a wholly collaborative process where all areas of the creative team have an essential role to play. The venue, and how it is utilised to immerse the audience in the production, opens the door to a diverse range of ways for professionals to work as a team and explore and develop ideas whatever their specialist area or discipline.

By the end of this unit, students will have explored the history of immersive theatre and its place in today's creative industries. Students will be clear on the importance of a story, and will have developed ideas and collaboratively worked on a piece of immersive theatre in line with today's industry standards.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Discuss the historical development of immersive theatre
2. Explore the key components essential to creating immersive theatre
3. Develop a piece of work for immersive theatre
4. Carry out a role in a piece of immersive theatre.
Essential Content

LO1 Discuss the historical development of immersive theatre

*The ‘fourth wall’:*
Breaking down barriers
The audience as a participant
Physical integration and breaking down formality
*The history of call and response in theatre*

*Immersive theatre companies, e.g.:*
Punchdrunk
Shunt
Blast Theory
Crew
Differencengine
Third Rail
Dreamthinkspeak
Fruit for the Apocalypse
Wilderness
Speakeasy Dollhouse

*The development of interactive technology in the theatre*

*Social and artistic significance of past and existing productions*

LO2 Explore the key components essential to creating immersive theatre

*Stimulation:*
The five senses: sight, sound, touch, taste and smell and how this can be represented

*The role of the audience:*
Participation, engagement and being immersed
Storytelling:
The role of the story – social significance and potential impact

Location/setting:
Installation
Fitness for purpose
Use of interactive technology
Audience location and placement
Flexibility
Accessibility

Collaborative working:
Definition of individual and group role
Allocation of roles
Time management
Communication tools
Collective decision-making
Creative engagement in practice
Common themes and vision
Setting aims and objectives

LO3 **Develop a piece of work for immersive theatre**

Collaborative working in development:
Definition of individual and group role
Allocation of roles
Time management
Communication tools
Collective decision-making
Creative engagement in practice
Common themes and vision
Setting aims and objectives
Performance space:
Fit for purpose
Health and Safety considerations
Accessibility
Flexibility
Audience placement
The role of the space in storytelling

Workshop ideas:
Utilising and developing existing techniques for the purpose of immersing the audience, e.g. improvisation and devised theatre techniques

Storytelling and working with a narrative in immersive theatre practice

Developing ideas for engaging and stimulating the audience through the use of the five senses, performance space

LO4 **Carry out a role in a piece of immersive theatre**

Collaborative working in application:
Individual and group role
Time management
Communication tools
Collective decision-making
Creative engagement in practice
Common themes and vision
Meeting aims and objectives

Realisation of ideas:
Engaging and stimulating the audience in practice

Communication:
Communicating the narrative/story
Communicating with the audience and creative team during the production
Technical skills:
Relevant to defined role within the production and aims and objectives

Aims and objectives:
Artistic intentions
Creative aims and objectives
Social significance (if appropriate)
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Discuss the historical development of immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Discuss the development of immersive theatre and the importance of the audience</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the development of immersive theatre and its importance in the current creative industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the influence interactive technology has had on the development of immersive theatre productions</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the connection between a range of theatre styles and immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate a wide and diverse range of techniques and processes that could be developed into creating a piece of immersive theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore the key components essential to creating immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore a range of methods to immerse the audience using some of the five senses</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Evaluate how a wide range of techniques and processes could be developed into immersing an audience in a production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore a range of performance spaces that could be developed for immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Develop a piece of work, as a collaborative project, that could stimulate the audience, using at least one of the five senses</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Develop a piece of work for immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Justify how the selected performance space will immerse the audience throughout the production</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate a wide and diverse range of skills through an immersive theatre production that effectively engage the audience through participation and immersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Pearson Levels 4 and 5 Higher Nationals in Performing Arts
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Carry out a role in a piece of immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Carry out a defined role in a piece of immersive theatre</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate effective communication through a range of technical skills in an immersive theatre production, relevant to artistic aims and objectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Demonstrate technical skills, relevant to role, through an immersive theatre piece</td>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Demonstrate the application of skills that interact with the audience during a production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

coneyhq.org

Coney HQ
Home page
General reference

differencengine.co.uk

Differencengine
Home page
General reference

www.dreamthinkspeak.com

Dream Think Speak
Home page
General reference

www.fruit-for-the-apocalypse.eu

Fruit for the Apocalypse
Home page
General reference

pearldamour.com

Pearldamour
Home page
General reference
www.punchdrunk.com
Punch Drunk
Home page
General reference

speakeasydollhouse.com
Speak Easy Dollhouse
Home page
General reference

thirdrailprojects.com
Third Rail Projects
Home page
General reference

thisisthewilderness.com
This is the Wilderness
Home page
General reference

www.weplayers.org
Weplayers
Home page
General reference

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 52: Performance Project.
Unit 46: Auditioning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1973</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The passport to earning a living as a performer in the creative arts industry is to be successful at auditions. By their very nature, auditions are high-pressure situations which need excellent preparation and technique to guarantee success. The preparation includes understanding the requirements of the audition, making the correct choice of repertoire and knowing how to rehearse speeches and perform under pressure in the audition. All of this takes considerable time and effort to hone the necessary skills.

This unit explores and prepares students for auditioning, whether it be professionally or for a higher-level course. Essential to the process is a considered and informed choice of material which is honed and polished to present the performer in the best possible light. To make sound choices, students must understand their playing range, capabilities and what type of role they would be suitable for. To develop material sufficiently to be able to perform effectively at an audition, a range of techniques will need to be applied.

This unit also addresses performance technique in audition situations to ensure that students stand the best chance of performing to the best of their ability. Finally, students will develop an understanding of the appropriate etiquette and conduct for the audition situation so that they know how to present themselves.

In light of the #metoo movement there have been many discussions about casting and the audition process relating to professional standards and what is required. While exploring audition skills through this unit, students will also discuss current policies and guidance on casting and audition requirements.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to select a range of highly appropriate audition material for a variety of audition contexts, prepare their material vocally, physically and psychologically and present speeches demonstrating relevant performance and employability skills.
**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the process of accessing own chosen progression route and materials needed
2. Justify the suitability of material for an audition portfolio
3. Develop an audition portfolio, employing relevant techniques through the development process
4. Present audition material using appropriate technique that promotes the acquisition of work and/or progression.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore the process of accessing own chosen progression route and materials needed

*Accessing Higher Education:* entry requirements, standards and expectations, finances and costs.

*Accessing the Industry:* Agents, Casting notices and access, organisations (eg. The Stage, Spotlight), showcases, networking, social media, standards and expectations, finances and costs.

*Materials:* CVs, digital and physical portfolios, photography, showreels, social media profiles, appearance (suitable clothing etc.)

*Health and wellbeing:* Confidence, mental stability and stamina, coping with rejection, determination and will power, reflective practice.

*Marketing and Promotion:* Physical and digital networking, communications skills, social media, organisations (eg. Casting Call Pro, Spotlight, Linkedin), websites.

*Types of auditions:* Workshops, screen tests, recalls, commercial castings, one to one, corporate casting, radio.

*Policies, procedures and guidelines:* Requirements and expectations, professional standards, audition locations, casting guidance and policies (2018 onwards)

LO2 Justify the suitability of material for an audition portfolio

*Material types:* types of text (eg. monologue) music, choreography etc.

*Audition requirements:* style, genre, theme, subject matter, context, audition briefs

*Current trends:* Appropriate material, standing ahead of the game, originality, industry awareness

*Promotion of strengths:* versatility, flexibility, range, artistry, confidence, communication skills, team skills and independence, professionalism, reflective practice
LO3 Develop an audition portfolio, employing relevant techniques through the
development process

Self Assessment: awareness of skills and boundaries, range and technique
assessment

Technique development (relative to specialist area) could include: text analysis, sight
reading, improvisation, flexibility, mental stamina, characterisation

Presentation Skills: Confidence, communication, physicality, anxiety and nerves
control

LO4 Present audition material using appropriate technique that promotes the
acquisition of work and/or progression

Policies, procedures and guidelines: Requirements and expectations, professional
standards, audition locations, casting guidance and policies (2018 onwards)

Self taping: types of camera, locations, lighting, framing, filming, editing

Show reels: range of material and type of content, settings, originality,

Technical Skills (relative to specialist area) could include: Improvisation, sight-
reading, response to direction, physical technique, vocal technique

Audition/Presentation Skills: Communication, confidence, professional etiquette,
presentation of self, audition prep (appropriate warm ups etc.) anxiety and nerve
control
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **LO1** Explore the process of accessing own chosen progression route and materials needed | **P1** Explore the accessibility of own chosen progression route | **LO1 and LO2**
<p>| <strong>P2</strong> Review own existing materials and the suitability for accessing chosen progression route | <strong>M1</strong> Analyse the impact of evolving trends in the performing arts industry, and how they may affect the accessibility of chosen progression route | <strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse how selected audition material demonstrates the needs of the progression route in a diverse range of audition contexts |
| <strong>LO2</strong> Justify the suitability of material for an audition portfolio | <strong>P3</strong> Explore the suitability of a wide range of materials for audition scenarios for a variety of progression routes | <strong>P5</strong> Develop a portfolio of audition material relevant to specialist area, applying techniques relevant to discipline |
| <strong>P4</strong> Justify a range of audition materials for own selected progression route | <strong>M2</strong> Critically analyse how selected material demonstrates the needs of the progression route in a range of audition contexts | <strong>P6</strong> Develop interview and audition techniques, employing relevant vocal, physical and psychological technique |
| <strong>LO3</strong> Develop an audition portfolio, employing relevant techniques through the development process | <strong>P5</strong> Develop a portfolio of audition material relevant to specialist area, applying techniques relevant to discipline | <strong>M3</strong> Develop audition material and interview technique, demonstrating assured command of relevant technique and process |
| <strong>P6</strong> Develop interview and audition techniques, employing relevant vocal, physical and psychological technique | <strong>M2</strong> Critically analyse how selected material demonstrates the needs of the progression route in a range of audition contexts | <strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate a perceptive and considered approach to the development of audition material and interview technique, resulting in a high-quality portfolio of audition material and confident interview technique |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Present audition material using appropriate technique that promotes the acquisition of work and/or progression</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate audition skills with creativity, skill and insight to fully meet the needs of the context and the requirements of the audition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Perform audition material using secure technique</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Perform audition material, demonstrating assured and confident use of appropriate technique and understanding of the audition context and its requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Presentation of material meets appropriate standards for audition context</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry.
Unit 47: Choreography 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1983</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

This unit further develops students Choreography skills as the backbone of dance, explored in the Level 4, *Unit 10: Choreography*. Students will already have explored the technique, pairing it with a human body and used it to create a vital pathway of non-verbal communication.

The aim of this unit is to develop students use of their choreography in more complex routines, clearly demonstrating their understanding of the development and complexity of dance-making, and the history of movement-making as an art form. Successful communication of their intentions will be developed with an exploration of what is defined as artistry in the world of dance and how this translates into movement.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to use complex contemporary dance language to develop routines, appropriate for the professional world of dance. They will be able to pick up and retain complex combinations of the required technique and communicate their own artistic intentions to fellow dancers and the audience. Students will understand and develop their own unique choreographic style and apply this where appropriate.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Develop required choreographic skills, as directed in lessons
2. Develop application of the required vocabulary for the genre
3. Create the required choreographic skills with technique, artistry, musicality and creativity
4. Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and dance language for the genre.
Essential content

LO1 **Develop required choreographic skills, as directed in lessons**

*Communication:* Dance language relevant to genre, delivery methods, working with an ensemble and individuals, professional behaviours and standards.

*Ideas development:* creation, originality, stylistic awareness through creation and relevant dance vocabulary, working with briefs, intent, stimulus – cultural, political and historical and social awareness.

*Practitioners relevant to genre* – influences, techniques, artistry, originality and communication methods and techniques.

*Safe working practices* – Health, safety and wellbeing. Sensitive and appropriate approaches in the direction of others.

LO2 **Develop application of the required vocabulary for the genre**

*Development of the use of dance vocabulary in context:* Range of choreographed work/combinations, genre, briefs, compositional devices (eg. motifs, repetition, manipulation)

*Ideas development to application:* creation, originality, stylistic awareness through creation and relevant dance vocabulary, working with briefs, intent, stimulus – cultural, political and historical, social awareness and civic engagement.

*Reflective practice:* Adapting to use of vocabulary

*Safe working practices through creation* – Health, safety and wellbeing. Sensitive and appropriate approaches in the direction of others.

LO3 **Create the required choreographic skills with technique, artistry, musicality and creativity**

*Consideration of technical needs:* Performance space/venue and staging, sound requirements, costume requirements, lighting, stage design

*Implementation:* technique, musicality, style, performance, artistry

*Ideas development to creation:* creation, originality, stylistic awareness through creation and relevant dance vocabulary, working with briefs, intent, stimulus – cultural, political and historical, social awareness and civic engagement.

*Originality:* Creativity, unique expression, the artists voice in practice,
LO4 **Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and dance language for the genre**

*Technical support:* Performance space/venue and staging, sound requirements, costume requirements, lighting, stage design

*Copyright:* Overview of the complexities of copyrighting choreography eg. Jerome Robbins/West Side Story

*Development to construction:* rehearsal process, time management,


*Ideas development to construction:* creation, originality, stylistic awareness through creation and relevant dance vocabulary, working with briefs, intent, stimulus – cultural, political and historical, social awareness and civic engagement.

*Communication:* Audience engagement, working with a group, managing vision, professional practice and standards.

*Reflective Practice:* Critical evaluation and response to feedback and critiques.
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1</td>
<td></td>
<td>D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>D2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td></td>
<td>D2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>M2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3</td>
<td></td>
<td>D3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>M3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>M4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LO1** Develop required choreographic skills, as directed in lessons

- **P1** Develop required technical skills and feedback, as directed in lessons
- **P2** Explore communication skills relevant to genre and techniques

**LO2** Develop application of the required vocabulary for the genre

- **P3** Develop application of the required dance language for the genre in class
- **P4** Develop communication of required vocabulary in class

**LO3** Create the required choreographic skills with technique, artistry, musicality and creativity

- **P5** Perform the required dance language with technique and musicality
- **P6** Apply the required technique to all combinations, as directed

**Distinction**

- **D1** Develop required technical and communication skills and retention of feedback relevant to choreographic requirements
- **D2** Develop confident application of the required dance language and an embodied knowledge of the required dance language
- **D3** Perform with innate musicality and creativity, underpinned by secure and consistent technique throughout

**Pass**

- **M1** Develop required technical and communication skills as retained in lessons
- **M2** Develop communication tools for required dance language for the genre with quality of movement
- **M3** Perform the required dance language with technique, musicality and creativity
- **M4** Demonstrate a deeper relationship with the music which complements the performance
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Construct own dance piece using required choreographic skills and understanding of dance language for the genre</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Choreograph own piece using required technique to a professional standard, using clear communication of dance language for the genre in an intuitive way and an experimental, self-created approach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Choreograph own piece using relevant technique and dance language for the genre and with clear communication of intentions</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Choreograph own piece using required range of techniques and relevant dance language for the genre, as retained from lessons in an intuitive way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 40: Partner Work
Unit 42: Physical Theatre
Unit 45: Immersive Theatre.
Unit 48: Classical Acting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/1984</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

For many actors, the challenge of classical texts and, in particular, Shakespeare, is seen as the pinnacle of their creative endeavours and one by which they test themselves against their contemporaries and forerunners. Irrespective of the reality of this contention, the classical canon poses a technical challenge which broadens an actor’s creative range and technical acumen and, in so doing, feeds their artistic development.

This unit is designed to explore approaches to the realisation of classical texts and introduce the actor to the process of bringing alive heightened text. Topics included in this unit are combining understanding of context with practice to realise text, developing the actor’s instrument imaginatively, vocally and physically to meet the dramatic challenge inherent in complex texts.

On successfully completion of this unit, students will have gained an insight into heightened dramatic worlds, explored these worlds to create imaginative possibilities, matched physical and vocal development to the depth and rigour of the dramatic material of classical texts, and broadened their imaginative horizons.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Discuss relevant classical theatre performance skills in the realisation of texts
2. Explore performance styles of classical texts to develop skill set
3. Apply a range of performance techniques relevant to the rehearsal of classical texts
4. Apply relevant techniques to the performance of classical texts.
Essential Content

LO1 Discuss relevant classical theatre performance skills in the realisation of texts

Research background of text:
Origins, influences, political, social and historical context, sense of life
Demands, e.g. space, textual structure, language, form, costume, issues
Performance demands, e.g. movement and gesture, physicality, mask, voice,
verbal facility, psychology of role, energy

Employ knowledge from investigations into performance context to elucidate the texts
and facilitate identification and comprehension of a range of playing choices and
techniques

Appreciate and develop an understanding for the stylistic qualities and technical
challenges of the text

Range:
Greek tragedy and comedy
Medieval
Shakespeare/Renaissance/Jacobean
Restoration
Commedia dell’arte

Analysis:
Form and structure
Playwright’s intentions
Subject
Theme
Social conventions
Social etiquette
View of life
LO2  **Explore performance styles of classical texts to develop skill set**

*Research:*
Exploring different classical texts
Investigating language
Interpreting meaning
Identifying form and structure
Thematic concerns
Gender, race, sexuality
Performance conventions

*Comparison:*
Defining similarities and differences between genres
Identifying appropriate technique to realise technical
Emotional and psychological challenges of text

*Skills e.g.:
Verse speaking
Characterisation
Movement skills
Embodiment of role
Technical challenges of incorporating style in playing role
Improvisation
Lazzi
Embodiment of mask

LO3  **Apply a range of performance techniques relevant to the rehearsal of classical texts**

*Rehearsal:*
Health and Safety
Psychological and physical preparation
Trust and co-operation
Meeting the stylistic, emotional and dramatic challenges of texts, risk taking and challenge, interpreting text and making choices
Develop vocal and physical capabilities to create an instrument to meet the challenge of the text

Voice:
Tone
Breath support
Projection
Diction

Character:
Analysis of text and embodiment of role understanding the approach to characterisation relevant to the context of performance (cf. Humours)
Embodiment of archetype

Text:
Language and imagery metre and rhythm words and images literary devices

Devices:
Alliteration
Antithesis
Assonance
Consonance
Dissonance
Enjambment
Hyperbole
Irony
Metaphor
Onomatopoeia
Oxymoron
Personification
Repetition
Rhyme
Rhythm
Simile
Symbolism
Physical:
Movement appropriate to genre
E.g. Choral movement in Greek tragedy
Character movement appropriate to genre
Social manners and formalities movement conventions use of costume and/or props

Imagination:
Improvising scenarios
Off-text work

Collaboration:
Working with others
Sharing good practice
Developing ideas/concepts/scenes
Working to present a unified interpretation

LO4 Apply relevant techniques to the performance of classical texts

Presentation of meaning:
Themes
Ruling idea
Playwright's intentions and vision
Given circumstances communicated
Coherent realisation of the text
Realising the director's concept/vision
Stylistic features of the text fulfilled

Physical performance:
Use of gestures and physicality
Tempo-rhythm
Use of costume and props
Stylistic conventions of text
**Vocal expression:**
Vocal characterisation of role
Clarity of delivery and interpretation
Projection
Diction
Meeting the stylistic demands of the text

**Characterisation:**
Role embodied
Psychology of role as appropriate
Physical characterisation
Archetype
Sustaining the mask
Character traits projected

**Ensemble:**
Working with company
Character interaction
Working off
Communication with audience
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1 Discuss relevant classical theatre performance skills in the realisation of texts</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1 Describe original context of performance and relationship to classical text</strong></td>
<td><strong>M1 Analyse original context of performance and relationship to classical text</strong></td>
<td><strong>D1 Critically analyse original context of performance and relationship to classical text</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2 Explore performance styles of classical texts and genres to develop skill set</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2 Explore classical texts/genres, identifying key features</strong></td>
<td><strong>M2 Demonstrate effective use of relevant techniques in realising stylistic features of classical texts</strong></td>
<td><strong>D2 Demonstrate effective use of relevant techniques in realising stylistic features of classical texts</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3 Identify performance requirements of genres/texts explored</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3 Apply a range of performance techniques relevant to the rehearsal of classical texts</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4 Identify appropriate rehearsal skills</strong></td>
<td><strong>M3 Apply rehearsal skills in realising key features of dramatic text with skill and judgement</strong></td>
<td><strong>D3 Apply rehearsal skills to realising key features of dramatic text with effective communication skills and informed judgement to fully achieve the dramatic potential of the text</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5 Apply rehearsal skills to realising key features of dramatic text</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4 Apply relevant techniques to the performance of classical texts</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6 Perform classical text, applying skills that effectively realise the text</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4 Perform classical text with skilled application of relevant techniques, intention and assurance</strong></td>
<td><strong>D4 Perform classical text with effective application of relevant skills to embody role, meaning and intention throughout the performance</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7 Demonstrate the application of relevant skills in communicating performance intentions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 13: Acting 1*
*Unit 17: Acting for Camera*
*Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors*
*Unit 19: Movement for Actors*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 44: Acting 2*
*Unit 46: Auditioning*
*Unit 52: Performance Project*. 
Unit 49: Producing Theatre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>D/616/1985</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The unit will equip the students with a basic understanding of funding and fundraising, introducing them to the difference between commercial and non-profit theatre and the business models associated with mounting theatre productions. Students will learn about securing performance rights and choosing suitable venues, casting and the audition process from a producer’s perspective. As the performance arts industry is dependent on good audience attendance, students will also explore appropriate and innovative advertising and marketing methods and analyse current market trends.

Students will be given research tasks related to producing small productions in a fringe theatre or festival situation. They will be required to investigate the advantages and disadvantages of locations, seek permission for performance from rights-holders, explore possible funding options, consider advertising (both for casting and for ticket sales) and create a sales pitch for potential investors. Students will be required to critically assess their own work and the work of their peers.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the processes and business models suitable for producing small theatre pieces
2. Evaluate a selection of business proposals, ranking them in terms of quality and viability
3. Create a viable business proposal for a small-scale production of a theatre work, considering fundraising opportunities, (realistic) revenue projections, and all associated costs in order to balance the books
4. Investigate relevant information needed to present reasoned and persuasive arguments to a panel.
Essential Content

LO1 Explain the processes and business models suitable for producing small theatre pieces

Explore the role of the producer in theatre productions and how producers contribute to the process of mounting a piece of musical theatre

Investigate current small-scale productions and theatre companies, e.g. those operating in fringe venues, small regional theatres and at festivals

Explore a range of business models, e.g. non-profit, profit share, and commercial theatre

LO2 Evaluate a selection of business proposals, ranking them in terms of quality and viability

Discuss the factors which contribute to make a sound business proposal

Set tasks which requiring the critical analysis of the work of others, e.g. peers, and encourage constructive feedback

LO3 Create a viable business proposal for a small-scale production of a theatre work, considering fundraising opportunities, (realistic) revenue projections, and all associated costs in order to balance the books

Research appropriate projects

Identify potential funding streams

Identify the target audience for the project

Explore relevant marketing strategies designed to reach the target audience (for casting purposes as well as for an audience for the production)

Explore how to create and manage a budget, e.g. operating a contingency fund

Look at ways to create a rehearsal and performance schedule to ensure the effective allocation of resources

Investigate options for audition, rehearsal and performance space

Discover how to secure performance rights
LO4 **Investigate relevant information to present reasoned and persuasive arguments to a panel**

- Learn how to organise material in a coherent way with an appropriate sense of audience
- Present written work clearly, neatly, and cogently
- Present work (orally) in a clear, informative and engaging manner
- Use research findings from the exploration of existing business proposals to underpin student proposals
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Explain the processes and alternative business models suitable for producing small theatre pieces</td>
<td>D1 Critically evaluate each business model and support with actual examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Explain roles and processes involved in producing small-scale theatre pieces</td>
<td>M1 Illustrate roles and processes using examples from actual productions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Explain the potential business models that can be used when producing small-scale theatre pieces</td>
<td>M2 Critically analyse the strengths and weaknesses of a given business model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate a selection of business proposals, ranking them in terms of quality and viability</td>
<td>D2 Critically evaluate how the developed business proposals could be improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the structure and essential content of a business proposal</td>
<td>M3 Investigate key features of a business plan, including target audience, funding streams, and marketing techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate a selection of business proposals, as directed</td>
<td>M4 Critically analyse the key strengths and weaknesses of a range of business proposals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Create a viable business proposal for a small-scale production of a theatre work, considering fundraising opportunities, (realistic) revenue projections, and all associated costs in order to balance the books</td>
<td>D3 Critically evaluate own proposal and those of others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Create a business proposal, identifying target audience and proposing a performance/rehearsal schedule</td>
<td>M5 Analyse reasons for using chosen model by referring to actual examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Produce forecasts of costs and revenue</td>
<td>M6 Construct a viable budget, showing a cash flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Investigate relevant information needed to present reasoned and persuasive arguments to a panel</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Show how presentations (written and oral) can be made engaging, convincing and tailored to a specific audience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Justify reasoned and persuasive arguments through a presentation to a panel</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Justify conclusions using developed evidence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Present information with confidence and assurance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Journals

Musical Stages
Theatre Journal
The Stage

Websites

www.mercurymusicals.com

Mercury Musical Development
What we do
Research

www.musicaltheatrenetwork.com

Musical Theatre Network
Resources Research

www.solt.co.uk

Society of London Theatres
About London theatre
Research

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry.*
Unit 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>H/616/1986</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The culmination of the rehearsal process is the presentation of a performance before an audience. One of the most significant challenges an actor faces is communicating the choices made in rehearsal through a well-developed and honed vocal instrument.

This unit is about the progression of vocal skills into a performance context. The foundation skills from the Level 4 Voice and Speech Skills unit 20, will be developed further and applied to performance.

Topics included in this unit are how to analyse text to identify performance choices, application of vocal process to realise text, how to develop vocal performance in the rehearsal room and transfer this to a performance in a space before an audience. Finally, students will evaluate the strengths and weakness of their vocal delivery and identify ways to develop vocal skills in order to sustain long-term development.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to effectively apply vocal technique to the performance of complex texts in a public arena.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Develop relevant technique to realise text in performance
2. Analyse text to identify performance choices
3. Apply relevant vocal processes to rehearsing and performing complex dramatic text
Essential Content

LO1 **Develop relevant technique to realise text in performance**

*Practitioners:*

Exploring methods of key practitioners to realise text, e.g. Berry, Estill, Lessac, Linklater, Rodenburg, Skinner

*Comparing voice methodologies/processes/techniques of practitioners:*

Exercises
Processes
Solutions

*Evaluate current level of technical acumen:*

Technical proficiency
Strengths
Areas for improvement
Vocal health

*Technique e.g.:*

Development of range
Resonance
Support
Articulation
Pronunciation
Pitch
Volume
Tone
Qualities
Tempo/rhythm
Isolation of tension
Centring
Alignment
Resonance
Identify:
Warm-up processes
Text exploration ideas
Exercises to improve strengths and weaknesses

Expanding and developing voice:
Tempo/rhythm, articulation, pitch, volume, quality, range, breath
Vocal workouts/warm ups
Applying technique – giving meaning to words/phrases/text

LO2 Analyse text to identify performance choices

Breaking down text for comprehension:
Breaking up text for understanding, e.g. units/bits/events
Problems/tasks/objectives
Verbal action, analysing text for character, theme, subject matter, supertask

Structure of language:
Verbs
Adverbs
Adjectives
Nouns
Pronouns

Experiencing text/language:
Feel of words
Resonance of words
Impulse from text
Connecting with vowels and consonants
Connecting to images
Performance choices:
Exploration of script through text exercises
Investigating structure of text
Through length
Use of devices to create effect and meaning
Discovering imagery
Analysing wordplay
Finding the metre and rhythm
Verse/prose
Verse speaking
Analysing choice of verbal action
Clues to vocal characterisation
Accent and dialect

LO3 Apply relevant vocal processes to rehearsing and performing complex dramatic text

Text
Monologues suitable for audition purposes, e.g. political speeches, scenes from classical and contemporary canon

Research:
Background to speeches and scenes – context, playwright/speaker's intentions and message, stylistic features

Rehearsal:
Application of techniques for realising speeches
Analysis of form and content of text
Exploring meaning
Interpretation and presentation of meaning
Expressive qualities
Characterisation
Voice into language:
Preparation for voice work
Using the breath to support the text
Matching breath to thought
Embodying and finding connection to visceral nature of words
Developing vocal range and text
Adding resonance
Text exploration exercises to explore use of language
Variety and volume in using voice
Experiment with stresses
Length of thought
Vocal energy
Owning the character’s words

Rehearsal and vocal process:
Read-through
Vocal preparation for rehearsals
Marrying vocal process with directorial process/working with directors
Rehearsal into performance/theatre
First run
Preparing for the theatre space
Awareness of set
Props and costume on vocal performance
Lighting/sound systems and vocal delivery
Tech and dress rehearsals
Marking and saving the voice
Performance:
Working in the space, e.g. assessing how the text matches the performance space, how to work the space to communicate with the audience, how the set will work in the space, finding the acoustic of the space, awareness of sight lines, adapting to the feel of the space

Breath, support, energy and articulation to meet the size of the space

Adapting to the configuration of the theatre, e.g. proscenium arch, thrust, in the round, studio, etc.

Working a dead space, e.g. support, on voice, articulation

Working in different mediums, e.g. film, tv, radio

Audience:
Preparation for performing for an audience

Warm ups

Dealing with first public performance

Adapting vocal performance to the audience

Dealing with fear/stage fright

Dealing with the challenges of the run

LO4 Analyse own vocal effectiveness in performance

Vocal effectiveness:
Evaluate vocal delivery in performance to identify areas for improvement and ways of maximising strengths

Identify vocal exercises and action plan for development

Performance:
Communication of message

Intent and interpretation of the text accuracy and effectiveness of vocal delivery in presenting meaning vocal dynamics and range flexibility of vocal instrument
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Develop relevant technique to realise text in performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify techniques for realising text in performance</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Develop relevant techniques appropriate to the realisation of the text effectively in performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Develop identified and directed techniques to realising text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse text to identify performance choices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse text, applying appropriate choices about performance possibilities</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explore text, making assured interpretive choices appropriate for performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply relevant vocal processes to rehearsing and performing complex dramatic text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply vocal processes to rehearsing and performing dramatic text with assurance</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply effective vocal processes to rehearsing and performing complex dramatic text that clearly communicate intentions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse own vocal effectiveness in performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Analyse own vocal effectiveness in performance, making relevant conclusions about areas for improvement</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse own vocal effectiveness in performance, making accurate and considered judgements about areas for improvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Develop relevant techniques appropriate to realising text in performance in a perceptive manner with assurance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse text, making perceptive, creative and interpretive choices suitable for performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Apply effective vocal processes to rehearsing and performing complex dramatic text and communicate the realisation of the text with assurance and perception</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate own vocal effectiveness in performance, making thorough and nuanced judgements about areas for improvement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 13: Acting 1
Unit 17: Acting for Camera
Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 44: Acting 2
Unit 46: Auditioning
Unit 48: Classical Acting.
Unit 51: Dance for Actors.
Unit 51: Dance for Actors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1987</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Versatility as a performer is an essential employment skill. It is more than likely that, during any career as an actor, a degree of movement, staging or dance will be required so this is increasingly seen as a specific employability skill for actors.

To this end, this unit has been designed in order to give acting students an opportunity to develop their dance skills and their knowledge of staging and movement, both of which would enhance an acting career.

This is a physical unit, which incorporates some research and explores a wide variety of dance styles and contexts. Students will explore their own dance and movement skills and analyse their own areas for further development to enable them to add dance/movement to their skills portfolio. Students will also analyse why movement skills are important for future employment in the performing arts industry, exploring the accessibility of roles that require movement skills.

On successful completion of this unit, students will have a basic dance vocabulary and technique and will be able to differentiate between dance, movement and staging.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate a wide and diverse range of dance styles and associated techniques, as directed
2. Develop a range of dance techniques, in class, as directed
3. Demonstrate style, musicality and rhythm through performance
4. Evaluate how movement skills can influence employment accessibility.
**Essential Content**

**LO1 Evaluate a wide and diverse range of dance styles and associated techniques, as directed**

*Explore a wide variety of contexts where actors are required to dance e.g.:*
Weddings
Court scenes
Ballroom scenes
Romantic
Dream sequences
Improvisation
Film
TV
Stage

*Explore own dance skill set and areas for development*

*Technical skills required for a range of dance styles:*
Technique
Vocabulary
Fitness
Confidence and assurance
Partner work
Musicality

*Explore a variety of film and theatre where actors have been required to dance. Examples could include:*
Scent of a Woman
Footloose
Pride and Prejudice
La La Land
Amadeus
Pulp Fiction
Dangerous Liaisons
Romeo And Juliet
Othello

*Styles and genres:*
Ballet
Jazz
Tap
American Tap
Court dances
Commercial dance
Folk dances

**LO2** Develop a range of dance techniques, in class, as directed

*Class-based assessment activity:*
Renaissance dances
Romantic era dances
Court dances
Jazz
Tap
Contemporary
Commercial dance
Traditional dances
Historical dances

*Technical skill development:*
Use of body
Musicality
Poise and posture
Use of dynamics

*Techniques:*
Relevant to styles as directed
Communication skills:
Communication with audience
Communication with a partner

Stylistic intentions

Characterisation

Use of body and movement for characterisation
LO3 Demonstrate style, musicality and rhythm through performance

Application of skills developed in class through performance:

Techniques: relevant to style rehearsed

Skills in application: use of body, musicality, poise and posture, use of dynamics

Communication skills in performance:
Communication with audience, communication with a partner, stylistic intentions, characterisation, use of body and movement for characterisation

LO4 Evaluate how movement skills can influence employment accessibility

Employability skills and accessibility of employment as an actor in the performing arts industry:
Versatility
Communication
Cross-discipline skills
Working within a creative team
Confidence
Stamina
Transferable skills
Competition
‘The triple threat’
CV-building
Cross-platform employment, e.g. film, theatre, games, museums, art galleries etc.
Exploration of case studies of the careers of actors in the industry, e.g.:

Hugh Jackman
Jennifer Lopez
Neil Patrick Harris
Catherine Zeta Jones
Jamie Foxx
Christopher Walken
Beyoncé
Kevin Bacon
Richard Gere
Daniel Day Lewis
Amy Adams
Natalie Portman
Audrey Hepburn
Mads Mikkelsen
Zoe Saldana
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Evaluate a wide and diverse range of dance styles and associated techniques, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the diversity and context of a wide range of dance styles and the visual impact in performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Evaluate the techniques required to perform the dances explored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop a range of dance techniques, in class, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Compare own movement skill set and areas for development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate style, musicality and rhythm through performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate work, through performance, as directed, with stylistic awareness and effective communication skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate musicality through performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate how movement skills can influence employment accessibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Evaluate a range of acting job roles that require movement skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Analyse the accessibility of the roles and how you would evidence movement skills to potential employers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 13: Acting 1*

*Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 44: Acting 2*

*Unit 48: Classical Acting.*
Unit 52: Performance Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>M/616/1988</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The purpose of training is to have the necessary abilities to be able to perform for an audience. This unit culminates in a public performance.

This unit is designed to provide an opportunity to test the skills developed during training before an audience in either a live or recorded medium. Students will gain knowledge of rehearsal processes as well as performance techniques. The intention should be that the rehearsal and performance aspects of the unit reflect professional working practices and give students an authentic experience of the workplace.

On successful completion of this unit, students will have gained the satisfaction of producing a performance for an audience and appreciating the skills they have developed.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Undertake relevant tasks associated with developing a performance project, as directed
2. Develop material in rehearsal through application of relevant skills, as directed
3. Demonstrate ability to work with others as part of an ensemble
4. Perform a role(s) in a performance for an audience, as directed.
Essential Content

**LO1** Undertake relevant tasks associated with developing a performance project, as directed

*Tasks:*
Attend rehearsals
Take and implement direction learn lines/choreography/songs/blocking to deadline
Rehearse with professionalism
Advance work
Both independently and as part of an ensemble

*Exploration:*
Accept and develop ideas
Put forward constructive suggestions
Engage creatively with material and identify choices in concert with creative team

*Research:*
Investigate social
Historical and political context of text
Interpret and analyse findings to develop ideas for performance

**LO2** Develop material in rehearsal through application of relevant skills, as directed

*Preparation:*
Background research
Learning material
Analysing material for understanding and creative choices
Developing work based on needs of the rehearsal/creative team notes
Vocal and physical practice regime
Self-management:
Timekeeping
Deadlines
Warming up
Attending meetings, e.g. costume fittings, press, Health and Safety

Rehearsal:
Exploration of relevant rehearsal process for project
Understanding and application of techniques and process to evolve material
Selecting and refining ideas in rehearsal to develop performance
Reviewing and improving work
Meeting deadlines
Organising and prioritising tasks
Employing appropriate technique to develop material
Problem-solving
Working with others
Professional conduct

Skills:
Employment of appropriate vocal
Physical
Psychological technique

Expressive capability:
Use of voice and physicality to communicate meaning and interpretation of material

Embodiment of role:
Emotional range
Communication and interaction with fellow performers and audience
Communication of stylistic features
Types of rehearsal:
Blocking
Cleaning
Technical
Dress
Camera
Song
Sitzprobe

LO3 Demonstrate ability to work with others as part of an ensemble, as directed

Collaboration:
Work as part of a team
Giving and receiving feedback
Working with creative team
Listening and responding to instructions
Behaving professionally
Responsibility to co-workers

Ensemble
Creating a unified effect by working on behalf of the play/musical/dance rather than individually

LO4 Perform a role(s) in a performance before an audience, as directed

Communication of role:
Vocal skills:
Tone
Articulation
Inflection
Accent
Projection
**Physical skills:**
Spatial awareness
Proxemics
Characterisation
Gesture
Facial expression
Tempo-rhythm

**Musical:**
Pitch
Tone
Rhythm
Intonation
Musicality

**Interpretation:**
Communicate subject and theme of text, characterisation – vocal, physical and psychological
Directorial concept
Stylistic features of text
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Undertake relevant tasks associated with developing a performance project, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Undertake required tasks, as directed, developing a performance project with attention to detail, confidence and assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Identify relevant tasks required to contribute to developing performance project</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Apply required tasks effectively and with assurance to developing a performance project, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Apply required tasks to developing performance project, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Develop material in rehearsal through application of relevant skills, as directed, demonstrating confidence, assurance and effective communication skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Develop material in rehearsal through application of relevant skills, as directed</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Develop material in rehearsal through sound application of relevant skills, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Develop material in rehearsal through sound application of relevant skills, as directed</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop material in rehearsal through effective and skilful application of relevant skills, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate ability to work with others as part of an ensemble, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate sustained and committed ability to work with others as part of an ensemble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate effective communication skills through working as part of an ensemble</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate secure, assured and effective skills through working as part of an ensemble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Perform a role(s) in a performance before an audience, as directed</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Perform a role, demonstrating accomplished technical and interpretive skills in fully realising that role in a creative and original manner, as directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Perform a role(s), demonstrating relevant technical and interpretative skills in realising that role, as directed</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Perform a role, demonstrating assured and skilful technical and interpretative skills in realising that role, as directed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 45: Immersive Theatre*

*Unit 49: Producing Theatre*

*Unit 55: Management Role.*
Unit 53: Mask Acting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>T/616/1989</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The mask is one of the oldest recorded items in human history, dating as far back as 50,000 years ago. The effect of wearing a mask can be powerful and transformative and, therefore, a possible reason for its longevity and global influence. What constitutes a mask is open to debate but, for the purpose of this unit, the mask is something that covers the face and transforms the performer.

This unit is designed to explore the process of acting with masks in order to fully appreciate how valuable mask work is as an expressive tool. Masks are influential in creating and developing performance and powerful as a means to improving acting skills more generally.

Topics included in this unit are the origins of masks and how masks have been used in performance throughout the history of theatre. Students will also explore the essential aspects of mask work, including shoeing a mask, embodiment of mask, internal monologue, status, playing to an audience, creating and developing material using a mask and performing in a mask while demonstrating the ability to interact with fellow performers and the audience.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to identify the origins of mask performance and appreciate its role in performance by researching theatre history. They will understand how to employ mask technique in developing skills and using those skills to rehearse and perform material in a mask.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate the origins of mask performance and its place in theatre history
2. Develop key techniques and skills for embodying the mask
3. Create material for performance by applying technique in rehearsals
4. Apply skills and techniques in performing in a mask.
Essential Content

LO1 Investigate the origins of mask performance and its place in theatre history

Earliest examples of wearing masks

Exploration of why there is a need to wear masks

Origins and purpose of masks through theatre history e.g.:
- Ceremonial
- Ritual
- Shamanism
- Disguise
- Clowning

Uses of masks in different cultures:
- Greek
- Noh
- Balinese
- Kabuki
- Commedia dell’arte

Functions of masks:
- The transformative/possessive
- As mirror
- As exposrer of truth
- As mediator

Use of mask in performance and training by a variety of practitioners:
- Copeau
- Lecoq
- Gaulier
- Trestle
- Vamos Theatre
- Strangeface Horse and Bamboo
Different types of mask:
Full face
Half mask
Full head
Animal
Character

LO2 Develop key techniques and skills for embodying the mask

Audience complicity in viewing the mask, suspending disbelief and joining in the game

Exploring the character of the mask:
Physicality, rhythm, status, placing of weight, body language, sound
Body reaction to what the mask sees
Inner monologue
Continuous underpinning thinking to keep the mask alive

Developing skill with inner monologue
Being the mask rather than acting the mask

Audience interaction:
‘Clocking’ the audience, communicating realisations/thoughts to audience
Length and weight of gesture in non-verbal mask theatre
Realisation, decision, action
Speed and rhythm of movement to communicate thought
Not doing, stillness or less is more

Initial preparatory exercises:
Putting the mask on/crossing the room and making contact with the audience, accept and build exercises, character centres, status
Tension states or tempo/rhythm, exploration of tension states in improvisations
Playing against the mask/countermask
Focus work
Exploring different types of mask:
Commedia
Neutral
Trestle
Larval

Personal management:
Focus and concentration
Responding to instruction
Working with others
Accepting ideas
Contributing to development of material

LO3 Create material for performance by applying technique in rehearsals

Working from stimuli

Exploration and development of material:
Improvising from scenarios
Developing the character of the mask
Developing routines
Experimenting with form
Experimenting with text and silence
Introducing choreography physical theatre digital media
Expanding moments through exploiting the flexibility of the imaginative theatrical space
Working with soundtrack/music props costume
Altering the scale of performance
Structuring material

Narrative structures:
Linear
Non-linear
Episodic
Equilibrium/inciting incident/rising action/crisis/climax/falling action
**Working with others:**
Accepting and rejecting ideas
Contributing to developing material co-operation
Responding to feedback

**LO4 Apply skills and techniques in performing in a mask**

*Use of body*

*Projection of mask/character*

*Physical embodiment*

*Clarity of inner monologue*

*Connection and communication with audience*

*‘Clocking’ the audience*

*Interacting with other masks/actors*

*Expressivity of performance*

*Timing*
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Investigate the origins of mask performance and its place in theatre history</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the development of mask performance in theatre history</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the development of mask performance in theatre history</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the development of mask performance in theatre history</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss the influence of mask performance history in today's performing arts industry</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop techniques and skills for embodying the mask in a responsive, flexible and coherent manner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Apply a range of techniques and skills for realising the mask with autonomy, creativity and full embodiment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify key techniques and skills for developing an ability to embody the mask</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Demonstrate considered use of technique to develop suitable material for performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore techniques and skills suitable for developing an ability to embody the mask</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate creative use of a full range of skills and techniques to create material for performance which exploits and harnesses the creativity of the mask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Apply a range of mask techniques to perform with skill and dexterity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop key techniques and skills for embodying the mask</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop techniques and skills for embodying the mask in a responsive, flexible and coherent manner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Develop material in a rehearsal context, utilising a range of mask performance techniques</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Demonstrate creative use of a full range of skills and techniques to create material for performance which exploits and harnesses the creativity of the mask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate considered use of technique to develop material for performance</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Apply skills and techniques in performing in a mask, demonstrating creativity and communication intentions through performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Create material for performance by applying technique in rehearsals</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Identify appropriate techniques for performing in a mask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Perform material in a mask, demonstrating assured application of techniques</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Perform material in a mask, demonstrating assured application of techniques</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Demonstrate considered use of technique to develop suitable material for performance</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Apply skills and techniques in performing in a mask, demonstrating creativity and communication intentions through performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 13: Acting 1
Unit 17: Acting for Camera
Unit 18: Voice and Speech for Actors
Unit 19: Movement for Actors
Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 44: Acting 2
Unit 48: Classical Acting
Unit 50: Voice Skills for Actors 2
Unit 51: Dance for Actors
Unit 54: Production Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>K/616/1990</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Many productions will now employ a production designer who is in charge of the complete and unified look of the whole production. The production designer will work with the director and producer to agree a set of designs for the set, props, costumes, and sometimes lighting and sound design as well, ensuring a coherent look to the production. The production designer will then employ set constructors, costume and prop makers who will work to these designs, often on a freelance basis.

This unit will allow students to produce, realise and analyse a set of production designs for a live production. This will entail in-depth exploration of the production designer role, including working with the text and the director's brief to ensure a complete set of designs for the production, adhering to set budgets and observing deadlines. They will also consider types of venue, especially for shows touring to differing locations.

At the end of this unit, students will be able to understand the process of producing relevant production designs for live productions.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Produce a set of initial response designs to a specified text and director’s brief for a live production
2. Develop designs to take forward to the construction phase
3. Produce a budgeted plan for the realised production designs, adhering to set deadlines
4. Analyse the designs realised for the production.
Essential Content

LO1 Produce a set of initial response designs to a specified text and director’s brief for a live production

Text analysis
Analysis of brief
Research
Exploration of ideas
Contextual references
Stage requirements

LO2 Develop designs to take forward to the construction phase

Design generation
Design development
Plans, scales, CAD
Constraints
Production team considerations
Meeting minutes

LO3 Produce a budgeted plan for the realised production designs, adhering to set deadlines

Construction methods
Deadlines
Budgets
Materials
Staffing
Risk assessments
Health and Safety
LO4 Analyse the designs realised for the production

*Performance space*
*Performers*
*Backstage*
*Visuals*
*Mechanics*
*Technology*
*Audience*
*Feedback*
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Produce a set of initial response designs to a specified text and director's brief for a live production</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Produce a set of initial designs with research notes which respond effectively to the director's brief and specified text for the production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Produce a well-researched set of initial designs which respond creatively and with insight to the director's brief and specified text for the production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Produce a set of initial designs which respond appropriately to the director's brief for the production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Produce a set of initial designs which respond appropriately to the specified text for the production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop designs to take forward to the construction phase</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse designs to take forward to the construction phase showing a considered response to production and venue requirements</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate designs to take forward to the construction phase giving a full and comprehensive analysis of production and venue requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Justify designs appropriately to take forward to the construction phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Refine designs as necessary to respond to production and venue requirements</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Produce a budgeted plan for the realised production designs adhering to set deadlines</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Produce a detailed and budgeted plan for the realisation of the designs showing full consideration of adherence to deadlines</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Produce a cohesive and comprehensive plan for the realisation of the designs showing effective consideration of deadlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Produce an appropriate budgeted plan for the designs to be realised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Produce a considered timeline for the designs to be realised adhering to set deadlines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the designs realised for the production</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Critically evaluate the designs realised for the production discussing considered developments</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the designs realised for the production making justified recommendations for further developments and making reference to production and venue requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Analyse the designs realised for the production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Evaluate possible developments to the realised designs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 59: Stage Management.
Unit 55: Management Role

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>M/616/1991</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

A management role in a production means being fully responsible for the success of the production pertaining to the production department that you are heading. To ensure success, excellent communication with the director, the wider production team, the performers and your own set of staff is essential. Each manager must understand the full responsibilities of their own section and department in relation to the specific performance. Constraints such as deadlines, budget and staffing must be taken into consideration, and the planning of the teamwork of the department during the performance should be approached with meticulous detail. The manager must ensure that the team work well together in their own section while also understanding backstage etiquette and working with the wider production team backstage.

Health, Safety and wellbeing is a large part of the role as the manager has a duty of care for their staff and also any crew or performers who are affected by any issues arising from their department. The manager must have a full understanding of any Health and Safety issues at the venue or for the production, and be able to provide coherent risk assessment relating to current legislation. The manager is also in charge of the budget for their department, and must ensure at all times that correct budgets and deadline are planned for and adhered to.

This unit is designed to impart the skills required to undertake a management role for the production of a live performance. Students will fully understand the responsibilities of the role to be undertaken and the management of staff.

By the end of this unit, student will be able to undertake a management role with competence and knowledge of responsibilities.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Undertake a management role in a live production
2. Explain what will be needed by the selected department for the live production
3. Risk assess a live production in terms of departmental requirements and staffing
4. Evaluate the success of the management role for the live production.
Essential Content

LO1 **Undertake a management role in a live production**

Issues pertaining to the specific department and the production:
- Budget
- Venue
- Pre-production
- Performance
- Post-performance
- Staffing
- Department requirements
- Equipment required
- Construction/making/buying requirements
- Backstage requirements: security, storage, facilities, transport if required, office furniture
- Communication, e.g. phones, radios, headsets, computers
- Risk assessment

LO2 **Explain what will be needed by the selected department for the live production**

Team requirements

Hierarchy

Team roles

Bonding

Teamwork

Communication

Resolving staff issues

Duty of care
LO3 Risk assess a live production in terms of departmental requirements and staffing

Health and Safety
Risk assessment paperwork
Budgets
Contingencies
Staffing issues
Adhering to deadlines
Adhering to professional etiquette

LO4 Evaluate the success of the management role for the live production

Pre-production
Post-production
Performance issues
Staffing issues
Staffing
Budget
Deadlines
Backstage
Facilities
Health, safety and wellbeing
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Undertake a management role in a live production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain the issues that pertain to selected department for the production and how these might be addressed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the issues that pertain to the selected department for the production and provide a clear planning of how these might be addressed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the issues that pertain to the selected department for the production and provide an in-depth planning of how these might be addressed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain what will be needed by the selected department for the live production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain how your department will be staffed and produce a plan showing the hierarchy and responsibilities of each member of your team</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Produce a plan illustrating the hierarchy and responsibilities of each member of the team, communication methods and details of team-building strategies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce a comprehensive plan with full consideration of the hierarchy, details of responsibilities of the team, communication methods and strategies for motivating the team and creating a supportive working environment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Risk assess a live production in terms of departmental requirements and staffing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Provide a risk assessment and plan for the requirements of the pre-production for your staff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Provide a comprehensive risk assessment and planning document for each of your staff for the whole production period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Provide an in-depth risk assessment and planning dossier for your entire team, documenting responsibilities for each member of staff at each stage of the pre-production and performance process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Provide a risk assessment and plan for the requirements of the performance for your staff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>LO4 Evaluate the success of the management role for the live production</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Evaluate the success of the management role in the pre-production process and the impact on the live performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P8</td>
<td>Evaluate the success of the management role in the performance and post-performance process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 21: Production Communication*
*Unit 22: Stagecraft*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 59: Stage Management.*
Unit 56: Sound Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>T/616/1992</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Sound has always been a key component in the performing arts, capable of lifting performances to new levels. Today’s technology provides an ever-growing medium for dramatic communication, and sound design has become a fundamental element of creative production. Working alongside the creative production team, a sound designer helps to create aesthetic experiences, aids communication and narrative, and develops mood and ambiance, taking audiences on new journeys of the imagination.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the fundamental aspects of sound design through hands-on technical experience and training. The skills and knowledge covered will provide a basis and point of reference for practical sound design in a range of performance scenarios.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to record, produce and arrange sonic elements for the performing arts, aided by development in critical listening and analytical skills, and enhanced contextual, theoretical and aesthetic awareness. They will be competent using industry-standard DAW platforms, and have a good command of core and common functionality. In addition, reflective practice and critical thinking are used to analyse and evaluate progress throughout, all of which are highly useful employability skills.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the sound design of a current professional production
2. Produce a sound design plan for a live performance
3. Undertake the sound design for a live performance
4. Evaluate the sound design produced, identifying strengths and areas for development.
Essential Content

LO1 Analyse the sound design of a current professional production

The role of sound design in the performing arts:
Drama
Theatre
Ballet
Dance
Music
Musicals
Opera

Approaches to sound design:
Realistic/non-realistic/stylistic
Diegetic sound/non-diegetic sound
Onstage/off stage
Scene setting, e.g. period, location, time, mood, environment

Character, scene and aesthetic development:
Atmosphere, expectation, information
Creating and changing mood, transitions, continuity, dramatic effect, audience expectation, and supporting narrative and understanding

LO2 Produce a sound design plan for a live performance

Sound design planning, e.g.:
Venue acoustics and technical specification
Script analysis and aesthetic development
Working with other stakeholders, e.g. director, producer, performers, sound operator
Budgets and cost considerations
External factors, e.g. lighting, costume, set design
Copyright, production
Preparing technical layout and cue sheets
LO3 **Undertake the sound design for a live performance**

*Introduction to a DAW:*
- Arrange, mix, and edit windows
- Transport and timeline
- Audio, MIDI preferences and configuration
- Basic functionality and workflow
- Recording and programming, e.g. real-time and step-time
- MIDI/audio editing, e.g. MIDI/Audio regions (trim, edit, arrange), MIDI/audio data (quantise, groove, velocity)
- DAW workflow, markers and screen sets
- Working with synchronisation – SMPTE and SMPTE lock
- Tempo mapping and time signature changes

*Recording and sound design:*
- Microphone operations, e.g. type, use, specifications, placement
- Field recording techniques
- Recording and editing voice
- Foley and sound effects
- Working with sound libraries
- Sampling and synthesis
- Audio manipulation (fade/normalise/loop/pitching)

*Mixing and post-production:*
- Introductory mixing skills, e.g. balance and stereo position, width and space
- Signal routing, e.g. channel, auxiliary, group and master buss signals
- Insert and send effects
- Introduction to different FX categories, e.g. time-based, dynamic, harmonic, modulation and spatial
- Use of automation to control channel parameters (volume and pan), instrument parameters, mixer and global parameters
LO4 **Evaluate the sound design produced for LO3, identifying strengths and areas for development**

*The process of reflective practice:*
Description of techniques implemented  
Rationale behind their implementation  
Evaluation of success and areas for development  
Development of further strategies based on reflective practice  

*Analysis of relevant pre-existing works:*
Production values  
Engineering techniques  
Compositional processes  
Key technologies used  

*Use of feedback and self-evaluation as a device for further learning and development*
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Analyse the sound design of a current professional production</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Analyse the sound design of a current professional production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate the role of sound design within the production, focusing on synchronisation with other dramatic elements, including supporting characterisation, siding transitions and scene changes, and creating dramatic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore key technical and aesthetic elements and the sound design role in the overall production</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Assess aesthetic considerations within the sound design and their importance in the creation of mood/ambience</td>
<td><strong>LO2 and LO3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce a sound design plan for a live performance</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce a sound design plan for a live performance</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate effective sound design skills through clear communication of intentions and technical application throughout the production process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Produce a cue sheet highlighting sound design considerations in relation to script/dramatic performance</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Discuss the role of sound design in supporting narrative communication throughout the production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake the sound design for a live performance</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Undertake the sound design for a live performance (minimum duration of 10 minutes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate the use of Foley, field recordings and sound synthesis</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Communicate a range of contrasting moods or emotions within the live performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Apply a range of effects covering time-based, dynamic, spatial and EQ</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Demonstrate the use of synchronised sound elements in relation to dramatic events</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Apply live mixing or pre-recorded automation (pan/ducking) to achieve a dynamic or spatial movement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the sound design produced, identifying strengths and areas for development</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Evaluate the sound design produced, identifying strengths and areas for development</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the sound design produced, including own role in the design and application of the sound design for the production, justified by feedback from the audience and other professionals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Critically evaluate the sound design produced, using feedback from the audience and other professionals to illustrate the evaluation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 21: Production Communication*

*Unit 22: Stagecraft*

*Unit 24: Sound Operation*

*Unit 29: Crewing*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 54: Production Design.*
Unit 57: Lighting Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>A/616/1993</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Lighting has become a vital tool in the performing arts, not only to see the performers and to draw the audience’s attention, but to move us in time and place and to enhance the mood. During the performance itself – be that theatre, music or even commercial events – the lighting designer uses their knowledge of equipment and techniques to plan and implement the lighting, taking into consideration all of the requirements of the event.

This unit aims to introduce students to the understanding, skills, and techniques used in lighting design so that they may learn to formulate and communicate lighting for live events. They will explore the different approaches to lighting design and practise methods of planning and communication before applying this to a live event.

Topics in the unit will look at different approaches and techniques for lighting design, different methods of planning and communication, carrying out the role of the lighting designer when responding to the brief and to the needs of the event.

On successful completion of this unit, students will be able to perform the role of a lighting designer for a live event.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator
2. Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting operator using industry standard practice
3. Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting operator in preparation for performance.
4. Evaluate the lighting design and own performance as a lighting designer.
Essential Content

LO1 Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator

   *Design process:*
   Initial ideas
   Marking up scripts/scores
   Selection and rejection of ideas
   Responding to brief
   Selection of equipment
   Design documentation
   Realisation

   *Communication:*
   Written verbal
   Hand-drawn plans
   CAD 2D and 3D modelling software
   Attending meetings and responding to other members of the creative process

   *Rigging and focusing:*
   Monitoring the rigging
   Directing the focus

   *Plotting:*
   Programming the lighting desk with cues, sub-masters and palettes

   *Tech and dress run:*
   Creating a cue sheet, ensuring that the lighting follows the plan

   *Health and Safety:*
   Use of Electricity at Work Regulations 1989, visual effects, e.g. strobe, Work at Height Regulations 2005, etc.
   Evaluation of the design

   *Investigate the approaches and techniques used in lighting design*
Types of event:
Plays
Musicals
Contemporary performance
Dance
Cabaret
Gigs
Classical music
Installation art

Approaches:
Wash/cover
Specials
Side lighting
Backlighting
Up-lighting
Use of colour and diffusion
Use of angles and shadow
Use of fades and chase
Cyclorama
Colour temperature
Fade timing

Purpose:
To see/not see
To enhance mood or atmosphere to set time
Place or weather
Artistic effect
Architectural
Relation to other elements:
Space
Scenery
Costume
Sound
AV

Lighting instruments:
Generic lanterns
Intelligent lighting
Follow spots

Associated equipment e.g.:
Colour scrollers
Smoke and haze machines
Mirror balls

Power and communication:
Dimmers
DMX
Art-Net

Lighting consoles:
Simple theatre memory desk
Large multi-cue desks with intelligent lighting functionality
LO2 Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting designer using industry standard practice

*Develop skills in relation to lighting design:*
Read and create design ideas in response to a brief, e.g. creation of mood board and research ideas
Respond to the requirements of the performance, justifying designs considering artistic, practical, economic, style, time constraints
Create documentation to communicate ideas using industry standard techniques, e.g. technical drawing, 2D CAD, 3D CAD, visualisers, rig plans, focus plans and cue sheets
Communicate ideas to the creative team visually and verbally
Communicate ideas to the technical team visually and verbally

LO3 Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting designer in preparation for performance

*Design process:*
Analysing the brief
Reading the script
Carrying out research
Liaising with the creative team

*Initial ideas:*
Identifying cues, creating mood boards and sketches, storyboards, refining ideas using industry standard techniques, e.g. technical drawings, drawings, 2D and 3D CAD, visualisers
Communicating ideas and responding to feedback

*Documentation:*
Rig and focus plans
Equipment list
Budget sheet
Lighting sections
Power supply calculations
DMX map
Preliminary cue list
Storyboard
Colour call
Circuit list
State list
Cue sheet
The fit-up
Communication with technical staff
Riggers
Focus team
Lighting operator
Follow-spot operator
Stage management
Be able to direct the focus to the plan making any necessary corrections and adjustments

Direct the plotting phase in line with the plan:
Liaise with the lighting operator and director/choreographer/stage manager, make any corrections or adjustments

Technical and dress run:
Ensure that the lighting works to the design

LO4 Evaluate the lighting design and own performance as a lighting designer

Evaluate the lighting design and own practice:
Meeting the requirements of the brief – artistic, interpretation, effective use of lighting, integration with other technical and performance elements, appropriateness of equipment and techniques

Professionalism – quality of communication materials, effectiveness of communication, working relationships, meeting deadlines, Health and Safety

Potential for future development of skills
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Investigate the skills, equipment and techniques involved in the role of the lighting operator</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate the lighting design of a professional live events relating it to standard lighting practices, analysing the role of the lighting designer in the production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Describe the role of the lighting designer, detailing their responsibilities at each stage and the skills required to carry them out</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the role of the lighting designer, explaining their responsibilities at each stage and the skills required to carry them out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Explore the purpose and approach of lighting design for different types of event</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse standard lighting design purpose and approach for different types of live event, referring to considered examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Develop the skills and techniques required to carry out the role of a lighting designer using industry standard practice</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate development of own skills and techniques required for lighting design using standard industry practices and identifying areas for improvement through an ongoing review of progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Explore skills required to design lighting for live events</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate own lighting design skills in line with standard industry practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Explore skills in creating and communicating lighting designs using standard industry practices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate the ability to carry out the role of the lighting designer in preparation for performance</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting designer in preparation for a performance, creating well-thought-out designs to a professional standard and communicating effectively with creative and production staff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting designer for a live event in the planning and rehearsal period, producing clear designs and communicating with other members of the creative team</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting designer during the planning and rehearsal period, producing considered designs using industry conventions and communicating well with other members of the creative team</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting designer during the technical set-up for a live event</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Carry out the role of the lighting designer during the fit-up, accurately and independently communicating effectively with the lighting team</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the lighting design and own performance as a lighting designer</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate the lighting design with reference to the brief and own performance, identifying areas of strength and areas for development in the context of industry practice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the lighting design, including own performance and identifying areas of strength and areas for development</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Evaluate the lighting design and own performance in detail, identifying areas of strength and areas for development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.avolites.com Avolites
Home page
General reference

www.etcconnect.com Etc Connect
Home page
General reference

www.malighting.com MA Lighting
Home page
General reference

www.strandlighting.com Strand Lighting
Home page
General reference

Youtube.com YouTube
Lighting Operations Manager,
National Theatre
Video

Youtube.com YouTube
On the magic of theatrical lighting
Video
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 23: Lighting Operation
Unit 24: Sound Operation
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 54: Production Design
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 56: Sound Design.
Unit 58: Set Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>F/616/1994</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The role of a set designer, in providing a setting for a production, is to create an illusion which will help to suspend the belief of the audience and then send them to a new world outside of the theatre walls for a set amount of time. This is achieved by providing relevantly designed spaces for performers to work in which allow an audience to become engrossed in a specific time and event.

In order to do this, the set designer must work with the director and the wider production team to produce designs which are viable for the space concerned, and take into account constraints such as budget, health and safety considerations, the context of the production and the work of the performers.

The designer must be competent in research and be able to produce designs which match the design brief for the production. The designer must also be able to produce scale plans and/or models which communicate exactly to a scenic constructor how the designer’s ideas are to be made.

This unit will give students the opportunity to produce a set of instructions for a live production, to be used by a set constructor to create a viable set for that specific production.

At the end of this unit, students will be able to understand the process of how to produce designs and plans for a production which adhere to the needs of a live production and allow delegation of the safe building of that set to a set constructor.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Interpret the text to produce a set of initial responses to a director’s brief
2. Explain the constraints of the design in relation to the specific issues of the production
3. Analyse the response to the design development process, including risk assessment and materials
4. Produce a set of plans/models to allow a set constructor produce the set designed.
Essential Content

LO1 Interpret the text to produce a set of initial responses to a directors brief

The text:
Context and content

The director's brief:
Artistic context and considerations

Research of text and brief considerations:
Primary
Secondary
Notes

The initial responses to the text and brief:
Thumbnails
Sketches
Ideas

LO2 Explain the constraints of the design in relation to the specific issues of the production

Practical issues:
Budget – martial
Venue
Space
Health and Safety
Type of performance, e.g. dance, acting, musical
Making the set, e.g. workshop areas

Other production areas, e.g. lighting, sound, choreography, costume
LO3  **Analyse the response to the design development process, including risk assessment and materials**

*Select the design to progress:*
Analyse why, e.g. notes and journal
Pick materials
Risk assess

LO4  **Produce a set of plans/models to allow a set constructor produce the set designed**

*Technical drawings*

*Plans/models*

*CAD*

*Notes to go with plans, e.g. construction notes*

*Budget*

*Materials*

*Communications to constructor*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Interpret the text to produce a set of initial responses to a director's brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Interpret the text and director's brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Produce a set of initial responses for appropriate research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain the constraints of the design in relation to the specific issues of the production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the constraints of the venue in relation to the designs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the constraints of the budget and other factors in relation to the designs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Analyse the response to the design development process, including risk assessment and materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Analyse a design to develop for the production, giving coherent reasoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Provide risk assessments for the construction of the set from the design selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Produce a set of plans/models to allow a set constructor produce the set designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Produce working plans/models for the set with instructions for the construction team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Produce a considered interpretation of the text and brief, providing reasoned initial responses with sound research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse the constraints of the venue, the budget and all other factors in relation to the designs, providing comprehensive solutions to identified problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate a design to develop for the production, giving detailed reasoning and accurate risk assessments for the construction from the design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Produce a set of secure working plans/models for the set with effective notes for the construction team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Produce a mature interpretation of the text and brief, providing insightful responses with perceptive research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse the constraints of the venue, the budget and all other factors in relation to the designs, providing comprehensive solutions to identified problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate a design to develop for the production, giving justified reasons for decisions and a full set of comprehensive risk assessments for the construction of the set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Produce a set of accurate and comprehensive working plans/models for the set with clear and in-depth notes for the construction team</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 2: Professional Development*
*Unit 21: Production Communication*
*Unit 22: Stagecraft*
*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*
*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*
*Unit 55: Management Role.*
Unit 59: Stage Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/1995</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The stage management department sits at the heart of each production, managing the rehearsal process and providing a hub which gives answers and solutions for production staff and performers. This essential department ensures that all of the crew and performers clearly understand their individual responsibilities for the production. They provide rehearsal schedules, risk assessments, and have responsibility for the prompt book which holds all of the necessary instructions for set changes, blocking and how the entire production will work. The stage management team work hard and are essential in ensuring that the production runs smoothly and according to the director's wishes.

In this unit, students will explore what is required to be successful in stage management. They will focus on the development of a wide range of skills, for example organisational skills, people skills, management skills, excellent communication skills and how to hone the ability to keep calm and think rationally while under intense and urgent pressure. This unit will allow students to use communication and organisational skills and apply them to the role of stage manager during the preparation, planning and realisation of a live production.

In a small production, the stage manager will undertake all responsibilities. However, in a larger production, the stage manager will be able to delegate some work to a deputy and an assistant stage manager.

At the end of this unit, students will be able to apply appropriate stage management skills to a live production.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the responsibilities of a stage manager for a specific live production
2. Produce the appropriate stage management paperwork for the live production
3. Undertake a role as stage manager for the live production
4. Analyse the success of the stage management role.
Essential Content

LO1 Explain the responsibilities of a stage manager for a specific live production

*Primary responsibilities of a stage managers:*
- Supervising the setting-up and running of rehearsals
- Using designer's plans for mark-out of set
- Listing and arranging the supply and return of all action props
- Props budgeting
- Supervision of props and scenery setting/striking

*Physical resources:*
- Arranging the supply of stage equipment, materials and tools

*Production planning:*
- Taking into account creative factors
- Production concepts
- Requirements
- Objectives
- Style
- Available Resources
- Human
- Physical
- Budget
- Constraints
- Sequencing of processes
- Availability of people
- Health and Safety
- Costs
Processes:

Tools, materials and equipment:
Access equipment
Hand and power tools
Electrical equipment, e.g. Smoke machines, correct handling and storage of props (especially food and drinks, cigarettes, swords, guns)
Location and use of fire extinguishers on stage, safety curtain

Overall responsibility for safe working:
Clear communication of protocols to crew and technicians both in-house and visiting
Allocation of adequate resources
Risk analysis documentation
Method statements

LO2 Produce the appropriate stage management paperwork for the live production

Documentation relating directly to a production:
Script breakdown
Props requirements lists
Prop-setting lists
Backstage cue sheets
Production and rehearsal schedules and plans
Production meeting records
Rehearsal and show reports

Administrative documentation:
Props and petty cash budget
Records and accounts
Stage management and crew rosters and time sheets
Contact lists
Stock lists
Safe procedures:
Handling and lifting heavy/awkward items
Communicating and co-ordinating with others
Working at heights
Use of toxic materials, e.g. Glues, paints,
Recognising potential hazards
Electrical isolation
Securing cables/flooring
Keeping fire exits and gangways clear

Legislation and regulation:
Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH)
Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulation (LOLER)
Provision and use of Work Equipment Regulation (PUWER)
PAT (Portable Appliance Testing)
Disability Discrimination Act (DDA) and others
Roles e.g. Agents
Producer
Director
Sound design
Lighting design
Costume design
Hair and make-up design
Set design
Composer
Author/writer
Choreographer
Performers
Musicians
Musical director
Stage management
Technicians (sound lighting etc.)
Wardrobe
Crew
Ushers
Marketing
Finance and merchandise

LO3 **Undertake a role as stage manager for the live production**

*Pre-performance preparation*
*Production planning*
*Post-production planning*

*Human resources:*
Motivating
Organising and supervising the work of the stage management team
Co-ordinating the work of the stage crew during performances
Maintaining backstage discipline
Liaising and co-ordinating with other departments
Health and Safety, ensuring smooth running of performances

*Physical resources:*
Organising and maintaining all backstage and storage areas maintenance of stage equipment, materials and tools

LO4 **Analyse the success of the stage management role**

*Reflection on preparation*
*Reflection on production*
*Reflection on post-production*
*Director feedback*
*Team feedback*
*Crew feedback*
*Development of role*
*Health, safety and wellbeing*
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the responsibilities of a stage manager for a specific live production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the responsibilities of the stage manager for a specified live production, giving comprehensive discussion of each part of the role, including the application of sustained and authoritative communication throughout the process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain the responsibilities of the stage manager for a specified live production</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explain the responsibilities of the stage manager for a specified live production, giving detailed discussion of each part of the role, including the application of effective communication throughout the process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain how the stage manager will communicate coherently with the production team and the performers for pre-preparation and for the live production</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain the responsibilities of the stage manager for a specified live production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain how the stage manager will communicate coherently with the production team and the performers for pre-preparation and for the live production</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Produce a comprehensive range of stage management paperwork required for the live production, including risk assessment, showing a confident and cohesive approach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain how the stage manager will communicate coherently with the production team and the performers for pre-preparation and for the live production</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce a fully analytical range of stage management paperwork required for the live production, including risk assessment, showing a comprehensive approach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce the appropriate stage management paperwork for the live production</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Undertake, skilfully and with minimal support and direction, the role of stage manager for both pre-production and the live production, demonstrating a mature and professional outlook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Produce appropriate stage management paperwork for the planning and realisation of the live production</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Undertake the role as the stage manager during the live production with competence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Produce appropriate stage management paperwork for the planning and realisation of the live production</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Undertake the role of stage manager confidently and effectively for both pre-production and the live production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Undertake a role as stage manager for the live production</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Undertake, skilfully and with minimal support and direction, the role of stage manager for both pre-production and the live production, demonstrating a mature and professional outlook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the success of the stage management role</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse the success of the stage management role undertaken in the live production with reference to feedback from audience and other professionals</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the success of the stage management role undertaken in the live production, making justified recommendations for improvements and supported by feedback from audience and other professionals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Analyse the success of the stage management role undertaken in the live production with reference to the main stages of production</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 21: Production Communication*

*Unit 22: Stagecraft*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 55: Management Role.*
Unit 60: Costume Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/616/1996</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Costume designers play an extremely important role within the creative industries. The generation of believable characters, and the visual adaptation of those roles, is key for any successful production. The ability to provide an audience with characters related to any period, concept or cultural consideration, from film to TV to theatre, is essential to the costume designer role.

In this unit, students will develop their understanding of the role of a costume designer by exploring how the plot of a performance is made authentic with the use of texture, colour and accessories. Costume design can include revamped clothing, adapted to fit with the character, or it can be made from scratch. It is the creative response to the character designs that allows or supports the actor/performer to project and perform.

Students will familiarise themselves with the narrative and individual characters of a performance and investigate methods of costume design in relation to it, presenting their initial ideas to a director and adapting them where necessary.

By the end of this unit, students will have developed drawing skills to support their vision of production outcomes, produced costumes to change a character, distinguished between main and supporting characters and reinforced the dimensions of the script. This growing industry requires innovative costume designers with an eclectic knowledge of costume cultural context and history.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the key information required for a given character for the purpose of costume design
2. Explore design ideas and methods for characters script analysis
3. Create design ideas for selected character(s) for suitable for a performance
4. Present designs intention to a panel and production team.
Essential Content

LO1 Analyse the key information required for a given character for the purpose of costume design

Text:
- Interpreting script
- Context
- Character types
- Genre
- Historical context

Working with the Creative Team:
- Director's brief
- Roles and responsibilities

Historical and contemporary designers relevant to text

LO2 Explore design ideas and methods for characters script analysis

Cultural and historical context and how this can be communicated through costume

Exploration:
- Colour
- Shapes
- Textures
- Embellishments
- Visual ideas
- Material ideas
- Process exploration
- Experimenting with techniques
Collaborative working:
Working with the director's brief
The creative team
The production team
Working within a budget
Time restraints

Communication:
Communication tools
Mood boards
Collaborative working
Workshops
Discussions
Video
Live streams

LO3 Create design ideas for selected character(s) for suitable for a performance

Consideration of design concepts:
Character
Measurements
Budget
Style
Health and Safety
Constraints
Wearability and movement restrictions
Director's brief

Context:
Research
Fit for purpose
End product
Social and cultural context
Exploration of end product:
- Colour
- Shapes
- Textures
- Embellishments
- Visual ideas
- Material ideas
- Process exploration
- Experimenting with techniques

LO4 Present designs intention to a panel and production team

Presentation skills and tools:
- Mood boards
- PowerPoint
- Discussions
- Communication
- Evaluation
- Peer observations
- Use of technology
- Sketch books and work books
- Samples
- Newspaper and magazine cuttings
- Templates
- Tracings
- Drawing and mix media skills
- Colour work
- Photographs
- Portfolio (online and offline)
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the key information required for a given character for the purpose of costume design</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the initial exploratory stage of costume design and the impact on the final product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Justify the essential information needed to realise costume designs</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse how the key information will influence individual design based on the characters and the director's brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the required information for a given character to initiate the costume design process</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Justify the essential information needed to realise costume designs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Explore design ideas and methods for characters script analysis</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the effectiveness of the costume design ideas in communicating the director's vision to a potential audience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Explore a wide range of methods for interpreting a script to influence costume design ideas</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse the influence of the selected methods and ideas on communicating the characterisation through costume design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Explore a range of design ideas to fit character for costume design concept</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore a wide range of methods for interpreting a script to influence costume design ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Create design ideas for selected character(s) for suitable for a performance</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Create a portfolio of design ideas that communicate the director's vision</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Produce costume designs that evidence an insightful script and character analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Justify characterisation through style, fabrics, accessories and drawing techniques</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Justify characterisation through style, fabrics, accessories and drawing techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Present designs intention to a panel and production team</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Justify how costume design ideas meet the director’s brief and effectively communicate intentions to an audience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>Present costume designs to a panel that effectively communicate intentions</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Justify how costume design ideas meet the director’s brief and effectively communicate intentions to an audience</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 27: Costume Construction
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 55: Management Role.
Unit 61: Hair and Make-up Design

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/616/1997</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The role of a hair and/or make-up designer is to produce considered designs for performers which fully meet the requirements of a specific production. The designer must be proficient with research techniques to ensure that the designs are meeting the requirements of the script, and also understand the constraints of working from a director's brief and with the wider production team, both which may impact on the production of the final designs.

This unit will allow students to produce make-up and/or hair designs for a live production, taking into consideration all aspects of any possible constraints and practical aspects. The make-up and hair designer is responsible for the look of the performers' characters in relation to their make-up and hair. This can range from a light touch for some modern contemporary performances to a full set of meticulously researched designs for a particular period in time.

All sets of designs will have their own sets of particular issues to address, and all types of designs must take into consideration the script, the director's brief, the performer, the type of performance and the consequences of the utilitarian aspects of that performance on the make-up and hair. Extra resilience, for instance, will be required for a fast and physical dance performance. The designer should also take into consideration if there is time and space backstage in between scenes for hair or make-up to be adjusted, remedied or changed for a new look or scene.

At the end of this unit, students will be able to produce considered designs for a production which a hair and make-up artist would then be able to take and use for that production.

*Please note, students may choose to evidence hair and/or makeup skills for this unit
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Produce a set of initial responses to a director’s brief for a live production
2. Produce a set of working designs, working within the wider production team for a production
3. Provide risk assessment for the designs, abiding by appropriate Health and Safety legislature
4. Provide working instructions for the application and realisation of the hair and/or make-up design.
Essential Content

LO1  Produce a set of initial responses to a director’s brief for a live production

Interpreting text:
Analysis of script
Character breakdown and analysis
Character in a working context
Number of characters
Time frame of text

Context:
Type of production
The creative team
Budget
Director’s brief
Time management

Initial responses to the text and brief:
Design ideas
Initial design sketches
Design development
Material selection

LO2  Produce a set of working designs, working within the wider production team for a production

Working with the production team:
Communication tools
Collective vision and ideas
Working with a director’s brief as a collective
Time management
Budgets
Production meetings
Collaborative working across teams
Organisation team-building skills

*Development of initial ideas:*
Evolving process
Producing working drawings
Problem solving
Practical outcomes
Communication of design ideas
Consideration for practical application
Experimental practices and exploration material selection

**LO3 Provide risk assessment for the designs, abiding by appropriate Health and Safety legislature**

*Safe working practices:*
Potential issues, e.g. allergies, hygiene, tools, electricity, types of make-up available, spraying inside, toxic substances, application of prosthetics, cleansing
Risk assessments, Health and Safety legislature, roles and responsibilities in relation to Health and Safety

**LO4 Provide working instructions for the application and realisation of the hair and/or make up design**

*Communication:*
Methods
Creating plans
Accuracy
Techniques
Clarity
Tools for application and realisation:

Starting points
Material types
Bases
Make-up types
Cleansers
Colours
Shading
Digital/paper-based
Video
Layout
Accessibility
Techniques
Tools
Hygiene
Processes
Products
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Produce a set of initial responses to a director's brief for a live production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Interpret a text to ascertain the requirements for creating hair and/or make-up designs for a production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Provide a set of initial response sketches for the production working to a brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce a set of working designs, working within the wider production team for a production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Discuss, with the wider production team, how the hair and/or make-up design intentions meet the needs of the production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Produce a set of working make-up and/or hair designs that meet the requirements of the planned production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Provide risk assessment for the designs, abiding by appropriate Health and Safety legislature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Provide a set of accurate risk assessments of the designs for the make-up artist and/or hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Provide a set of Health and Safety considerations for the performers in relation to make-up and/or hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the requirements for the live production for hair and/or make-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse how the working designs communicate the production intentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Provide a set of effective risk assessments for the designs which provide considered Health and Safety aspects for the performer, the make-up artist and the hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Provide a set of Health and Safety considerations for the performers in relation to make-up and/or hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the hair and/or make up requirements for the production that work within the context of the specified text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse how the created designs meet the needs of the production and effectively interpret the text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Realise a set of comprehensive risk assessments which provide in-depth risk assessment for all aspects of the production in relation to the make-up and hair designs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Provide working instructions for the application and realisation of the hair and/or make up design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.thoughtco.com

ThoughtCo

Art of hair and make-up design

General reference

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 21: Production Communication*

*Unit 22: Stagecraft*

*Unit 28: Hair and Make-up Application*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 55: Management Role*.
Unit 62: Mask and Puppet Making

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/1998</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Masks and puppetry have been used within the performing industry for hundreds of years and still continue to inspire audiences. Their history and cultural context have influenced and contributed to the visual arts and embody all aspects and fundamental components of art practice. Masks and puppetry continue to be used as stimulating components within the theatre, TV and film industry. Both are also extensively used for narrative, ritual, religion and spiritual purposes and have been a powerful method of teaching within education.

These ancient arts form allow for communication to be used to portray ideas and current issues in a stimulating and creative way while, at the same time, an audience can indulge in an imaginative and reflective way. The approach differs from presenting a ‘real’ actor although, it has to be said, masks and puppets are only truly brought to life through the expertise of the actor. The introduction of theatre performances such as The Lion King, War Horse, Avenue Q and King Kong has certainly paved the way for creative artists to continue to develop the practice of puppet and mask making. Puppets can be made in a variety of ways and operated by one finger or through a team of puppeteers.

This unit will allow students to investigate the genre by using the wide range of materials, techniques and processes that underpin puppet-making and mask making skills. Researching both historical and contemporary puppet making will give students the opportunity to create their own puppet.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to engage with the characteristics and skills required in the making of a puppet and/or mask suitable for use in theatrical productions.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore historical and contemporary puppet and/or mask types and construction
2. Explore techniques and processes for puppet and/or mask making
3. Create a character puppet and/or mask using a range of materials and methods
4. Evaluate the physical mechanisms of the constructed puppet and/or mask.
Essential Content

LO1  Explore historical and contemporary puppet and/or mask types and construction

Mask/Puppets types and purpose:
Historical and cultural, e.g. Punch and Judy, Burmese, Indian, Chinese, European, Native American

Contemporary mask and/or puppet companies and festivals, e.g.:
Festival Mondial des Théâtres de Marionnettes
Suspense Puppetry Festival
Henson International Festival of Puppet Theatre and the Blind Summit Theatre

Influential contemporary productions:
Lion King
War Horse
Avenue Q
King Kong

LO2  Explore techniques and processes for puppet and/or mask making

Techniques and processes for puppet and/or mask making:
Hand
Rod
String
Shadow
Humanettes
Animation
Mouth puppets
Marionettes
LO3 Create a character puppet and/or mask using a range of materials and methods

Experimentation, construction, forming and manipulation

Materials:
Glues and solvents
Wood
Clay
Fabrics
Papier mâché
Card
Polystyrene
Foam rubber
Plastic and cloth

Methods:
Carving and modelling

Mould preparation:
Plaster
Latex
Compound
Expandable foam
Fibreglass

Frames:
Mechanisms

Tools:
Health and Safety
Use of hand and power tools, glue gun, soldering equipment
LO4 Evaluate the physical mechanisms of the constructed puppet and/or mask

Present puppet and/or mask making and final construction:
Step-by-step accounts
Sketches
PowerPoint
CAD
Purpose
Potential use for performances
Durability
Size
Diagrams
Character analysis
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore historical and contemporary puppet and/or mask types and construction</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explore the historical development of puppets and/or mask</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the historical and contemporary contexts of puppet and/or mask making, design and performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore methods of puppet and/or mask construction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore techniques and processes for puppet and/or mask making</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore a range of experimental puppet-making and/or mask techniques that focus on visual communication</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate a wide range of puppet-making and/or mask techniques and processes and the importance of visual communication in the design process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore design ideas based on character and research in response to design brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Create a character puppet and/or mask using a range of materials and methods</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explore character requirements using a variety of materials</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Create a character puppet and/or mask using a wide variety of materials and techniques</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate how puppet-making and/or mask skills are effective in communicating intentions in a performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the physical mechanisms of the constructed puppet and/or mask</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate the physical mechanisms of the puppet and/or mask created</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of the puppet and/or mask as a visual communication tool</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Analyse the constraints in puppet-making and/or mask techniques and processes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites

www.handspringpuppet.co.za
Hand Spring Puppet
Home page
General reference

www.maskandpuppet.co.uk
Mask and Puppet
Home page
General reference

www.up-front.com
Up front
Home page
General reference
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 54: Production Design.
Unit 63: Working in Creative Education

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>Y/616/2004</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The ability to unpack and demystify what is done in order to perform well can often be an art in itself. Whether teaching informal one-to-one lessons or delivering a workshop or masterclass to a group, a considered and structured approach to learning will improve the experience and results, and enhance student development.

For many professionals working in the creative industry, teaching has become a staple part of their portfolio careers. This unit is designed to introduce students to working within a creative arts educational environment and to explore and develop skills required in a variety of educational settings.

In this unit, students will explore ways to use their vocational experience and subject knowledge to deliver learning in a variety of scenarios and settings. They will gain insight into the range of ways in which students might learn new knowledge or skills and develop their understanding of how to support, enable and monitor progress. Students will also design Programmes of Study and explore creative assessment methods to motivate and engage learners.

By the end of the unit, students will be prepared to take their first confident steps as a creative arts educator.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess pedagogic strategies for variety of creative arts educational contexts
2. Develop materials and plans for the delivery of effective learning in a variety of teaching contexts
3. Deliver a range of activities in a variety of teaching contexts
4. Evaluate the quality of teaching and learning across a series of taught sessions.
Essential Content

LO1 **Assess pedagogic strategies for variety of creative arts educational contexts**

*Teaching methodologies:*
- Learning styles
- Differentiation
- Psychology of learning
- Motivation and engagement
- Feedback and feedforward
- Peer-to-peer learning

LO2 **Develop materials and plans for the delivery of effective learning in a variety of teaching contexts**

*Planning:*
- Creating session objectives
- Formal and informal assessment activities
- Formative and summative assessment
- Use of learning resources
- Flipping the classroom
- Schemes of Work and session plans
- The starter and the plenary

LO3 **Deliver a range of activities in a variety of educational contexts**

*Contexts:*
- Large group or lecture
- Masterclass
- Workshop
- Small group
- 1-2-1
- Online/video lesson
Delivery:
Pace and style
Transitions and plenaries
Assessment and checking learning
Questioning strategies
Feedback
Alignment with learning objectives

Classroom management:
Management of resources
Engagement and inclusivity

LO4 Evaluate the quality of teaching and learning across a series of taught sessions

Reflecting:
Peer observation
Self-evaluation
Student satisfaction
Student achievement
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess pedagogic strategies for a variety of creative arts educational contexts</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain different learning styles, and techniques for catering for them</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Relate pedagogic theories to teaching best practice in the context of own Performing Arts education area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss techniques to promote student engagement and motivation</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Organise teaching resources to support learning across a series of planned sessions</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Verify the suitability of your planning for both the subject area and expected student needs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Develop materials and plans for the delivery of effective learning in a variety of educational contexts</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce a Scheme of Work that outlines Learning Objectives and assessment strategy towards an overall aim</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Organise teaching resources to support learning across a series of planned sessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Design session plans to illustrate tasks and activities that will support students in achieving targeted learning outcomes</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Employ an assessment strategy to check students' learning</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate teaching and learning of a range of sessions that have been delivered or observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Deliver a range of activities in a variety of educational contexts</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Deliver a series of one-to-one sessions</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Respond to student progress in real time and through the modification of teaching plans and materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Deliver a series of group or workshop sessions</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Employ an assessment strategy to check students' learning</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Respond to student progress in real time and through the modification of teaching plans and materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note:** The table above outlines the learning outcomes and assessment criteria for the Pearson Levels 4 and 5 Higher Nationals in Performing Arts specification, as of Issue 4, April 2020. The criteria are structured to evaluate students' abilities in pedagogical strategies, planning, and activity delivery within arts educational contexts.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the quality of teaching and learning across a series of taught sessions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Record student progress across the taught sessions</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Justify developments and modifications made to plans and materials in response to student progress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of teaching techniques and delivery methods used</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry.
Unit 64: Directing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>J/616/8686</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The role of director in any production, whether a theatre production or a recorded media production, requires a wide range of diverse skills and the ability to not only apply these skills, but to do so with a very clear creative vision. Although originating in the theatre, the role of director has expanded to include many different types of production, including film, TV, radio, games and to this end, this unit has been created to allow the space to explore directing in any applicable context. Please note the term recorded media in this context, refers to film, radio, TV and games.

The ever evolving world of technology has become an increasingly vital consideration in not only the realisation of a creative vision, but also in its concept. The creative use of technology should be explored through this unit as a tool to realise directorial vision.

In this unit, students will explore the skills required to direct including exploring key directors and their techniques, interpreting and planning the realisation of creative content, working with a creative team to capture and inspire, the style and structure of a work and exploring the importance of having a strong understanding of the acting and writing process. Leadership and management skills and the skills required to create a healthy and creative working environment will also be explored. Students will demonstrate their skill development through directing their own production, allowing them to develop their own unique style and artistry in a practical and relevant context.

By the end of this unit, students will be able to carry out the role as a director and critically evaluate their own directing process and skills, in a production in either theatre or recorded media format.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the practices of a range of directors in theatre and/or recorded media
2. Explore a wide range of directing skills needed theatre and/or recorded media
3. Carry out a role as a director in a production
4. Evaluate own directing processes and areas for future development.
Essential Content

**LO1  Analyse the practices of a range of directors in theatre and/or recorded media**

Analysis of a wide and diverse range of directors from theatre and/or recorded media

The historical development of practices used and the pioneers in the relevant field

The social, political, cultural and historical context

Methods and techniques used to explore innovative directing and achieve artistic vision

The impact of technology in influencing practices, ground breaking productions relevant to medium

Career development of directors:

routes to directing

training routes

barriers

diversity

**LO2  Develop materials and plans for the delivery of effective learning in a variety of teaching contexts**

Artistic vision:

Development process and realisation and achievement

Technical skills and creative Skills:

Methods and practices

Use of technology

Storytelling

Approaches to text
Leadership and Management Skills:
Meeting aims and objectives
Communication skills and methods
Time management skills
Working with performers and awareness of relevant techniques
Working with production team
Creating a working environment

Working with a production team:
Resource management
Scheduling
Time management
Problem solving
Transparency

LO3 Carry out a role as a director in a production

Realisation of artistic vision in practice
Creative and technical Skills in practice
Leadership and management skills in practice

LO4 Evaluate own directing processes and areas for future development

Evaluation of:

Artistic vision:
Development process and realisation and achievement
Technical and creative skills in practice:
Methods and practices
Use of technology
Storytelling
Approaches to text
Leadership and management skills:
Meeting aims and objectives
Communication skills and methods
Time management skills
Working with performers
Working with production team
Creating a working environment
Health, safety and wellbeing
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Analyse the practices of a range of directors in theatre and/or recorded media</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse a diverse range of innovative directors in theatre or recorded media, justifying how their practices have led them to innovation</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse a wide and diverse range of innovative directing practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Analyse the practices of a range of directors in either theatre or recorded media</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse the impact technology has had on the development of directing practices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore a wide range of directing skills needed for theatre and/or recorded media</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore the relationship between the writers, the actors and the directors interpretation</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate an analysis of the skills needed from a director to communicate stylistic vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore the fundamental creative and technical skills that develop a director's craft and stylistic vision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Carry out a role as a director in a production</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Create a working environment that supports clear communication between production team and self and supports the artistic vision for a production</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Demonstrate innovative creative, technical and artistic skills through highly effective leadership and management skills in the direction of a production that clearly defines own artistic vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out the role of director in a production, demonstrating clear artistic vision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate leadership and management skills throughout the production process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D2** Demonstrate innovative creative, technical and artistic skills through highly effective leadership and management skills in the direction of a production that clearly defines own artistic vision.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate own directing processes and areas for future development</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate own directing process, exploring use of technical and creative skills in achieving own artistic vision and areas for further development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate the success of own directing process in realising creative vision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate communication skills in relation to managing and leading a working environment for own production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate own leadership and management skills used as a director and areas for further development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

actorsandperformers.com

theatrelinks.com

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry (Pearson-Set)*

*Unit 2: Professional Development*

*Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism*

*Unit 20: Devising Theatre and Performance*

*Unit 32: Creative Research Project (Pearson-Set)*

*Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry*

*Unit 45: Immersive Theatre*

*Unit 52: Performance Project*

*Unit 55: Management Role*
Unit 65: The Freelance Hair and Makeup Artist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>L/617/1783</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The roles and responsibilities of a freelance hair and/or makeup artist in today's world is diverse, varied and can cross over into many industries. Makeup and hair artist may work in the creative industries which includes film, tv, games, theatre, fashion but also may work in the beauty and wedding industry. Working as a freelance artist, also requires acute business and self-management skills, managing budgets and the ability to work both independently and within a team. Social media also, now has an increasingly important role to play in this industry and is an essential marketing tool.

This unit has been designed to explore the skills required to be a freelance makeup and/or hair artist in any appropriate setting, as defined by a brief. Briefs could include working as a film/tv makeup/hair artist, a beauty youtuber, theatre makeup/hair artist, wedding beauty specialist or salon artist.

Through this unit, students will explore a wide range of skills appropriate for working as a freelance hair and/or makeup artist include the business roles and responsibilities, including working to a budget, time management, health and safety, teamwork, communication and working under pressure. Students will also explore the depth of research required to meet employer needs to ensure briefs are followed, fulfilled and developed where appropriate.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the role and responsibilities of a freelance hair and/or makeup artist
2. Produce designs based on an industry standard brief
3. Apply advanced makeup and/or hair techniques to meet the requirements of an industry standard brief
4. Analyse the success of meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development.
Essential content

LO1 Explore the role and responsibilities of a freelance hair and/or makeup artist

*Role types:*
- Film/TV
- Theatre
- Wedding
- Beauty salon
- Youtuber
- Fashion
- Fashion editorial.

*Marketing:*
- Social Media
- Portfolio types
- Networking
- Branding
- Sponsorship.

*Administration relevant to setting:*
- Budgets
- Scripts
- Call sheets
- Continuity sheets
- Briefs
- Planning documentation
- Schedules
- Time scales
- Invoicing
- Health and safety.
LO2  **Produce designs based on an industry standard brief**

*Brief types:*
- Film/TV
- Theatre
- Wedding
- Beauty salon
- Youtuber
- Fashion
- Fashion editorial.

*Brief analysis:*
- Customer/employer need
- Budget
- Event type
- Location
- Timescale
- Tools and equipment
- Script analysis (if appropriate)

*Design development:*
- Location
- Lighting
- Event type
- Durability
- Research methods
- Documentation.
LO3 Apply advanced makeup and/or hair techniques to meet the requirements of an industry standard brief

*Preparation:*
- Working to a brief
- Creating designs
- Planning process
- Drawings
- References
- Charts
- Working in a team
- Timescales
- Originality
- Exploring ideas.

*Health and safety:*
- Regulations
- Policies and procedures that must be adhered to
- Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

*Hair:*
- Industry standard tools
- Equipment and products
- Hair preparation
- Dressing
- Styling and finishing techniques
- Preparation and application of hair pieces/wigs/facial hair.

*Makeup:*
- Industry standard tools
- Equipment and products
- Skin preparation (body and face) skin aftercare
- Techniques for a wide and diverse range of environments.
Resources:
Kit
Model selection
Preparation
Charts
Designs
Reference material.

Portfolio building:
Types of portfolio – digital or print
Drawings and sketches
Reference documentation
Photographic images
Research materials
Portfolio requirements for employers.

LO4 **Analyse the success of meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development**

**Working to a brief:**
Meeting outcomes and expectations
Meeting deadlines
Time management.

**Planning process:**
Effectiveness of planning
Research
Design process
Originality

**Technical Skills:**
Effectiveness and appropriateness of techniques, styles, tools and kit used.
Personal skills:
Communication skills
Team working skills
Time management
Confidence
Organisation
Independent skills.

Feedback:
Tutor
Peer
Audience
Employer/customer/industry specialists where possible.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the role and responsibilities of a freelance hair and/or makeup artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce designs based on an industry standard brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply advanced makeup and/or hair techniques to meet the requirements of an industry standard brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Access and utilise design and production resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO5</strong> Plan, organise and manage a range of production and performance elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO6</strong> Evaluate output against both personal and professional production and performance standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the success of meeting the requirements of the brief and areas for future development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse the success of the project in meeting the brief and the freelance skills set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism
Unit 25: Special FX
Unit 28: Hair and Makeup Application
Unit 30: Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and makeup
Unit 31: Period Hair and Makeup
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 65: Hair and Makeup Design
Unit 66: Special EX 2
Unit 66: Special FX 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/617/1784</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

The world of Special FX has seen some vast changes and the technology has had a significant impact on the creative industries. The area is vast with mechanical effects, optical effects and visual effects all sit under the heading of Special FX. For the purpose of this unit, the focus is on the different types of special FX used in a range of productions and events – prosthetics, lighting and sound effects, animated props and animatronics, pyrotechnics, fake snow/fog etc. This unit has been designed to allow students to explore their specialist area under the Special FX heading e.g. Special FX Makeup Artist, Prosthetics Artist, Special FX technician.


Students will explore a range of Special FX and then focus on their own special FX area. They will work on developing designs and ideas using the appropriate industry standard processes and procedures and produce a portfolio of their work relevant to their specialist special FX area.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse a range of special FXs, appropriate for a variety of mediums and the importance of keeping up to date with current trends.
2. Explore special FX design ideas using industry standard tools and techniques
3. Produce a portfolio of special FX designs, working to a defined brief
4. Analyse the strengths and areas of development of the Special FX portfolio.
Essential Content

LO1 **Analyse a range of special FXs, appropriate for a variety of mediums and the importance of keeping up to date with current trends**

*Types of Special FX:*
- Mechanical
- Optical
- CGI
- etc.

*Health and safety:*
- Regulations
- Policies and procedures that must be adhered to
- Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

*Industry standard tools, equipment, products, and techniques for a wide and diverse range of environments*

*Current trends and influences:*
- Technology
- Social
- Cultural
- Political
- Economic factors
- Diversity.
LO2 Explore special FX design ideas using industry standard tools and techniques

*Preparation:*
- Working to a brief
- Creating designs
- Planning process
- Drawings
- References
- Charts
- Working in a team
- Timescales
- Originality
- Exploring ideas.

*Development of Health and safety:*
- Regulations
- Policies and procedures that must be adhered to
- Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

*Design development:*
- Location
- Lighting
- Event type
- Durability
- Research methods
- Documentation.

*Industry standard tools, equipment, products, and techniques for a wide and diverse range of environments.*
Resources:
Kit
Model selection
Preparation
Charts
Designs
Reference material
Materials
Tools
Moulds.

Portfolio building:
Types of portfolio – digital or print
Drawings and sketches
Reference documentation
Photographic images
Research materials
Portfolio requirements for employers.
LO3  **Produce a portfolio of special FX designs, working to a defined brief**

*Portfolio building:*
- Types of portfolio – digital or print
- Drawings and sketches
- Reference documentation
- Photographic images
- Research materials
- Portfolio requirements for employers.

*Health and safety in practice:*
- Regulations
- Policies and procedures that must be adhered to
- Relevant to workplace environment and resources used.

LO4  **Analyse the strengths and areas of development of the Special FX portfolio**

*Working to a brief:*
- Meeting outcomes and expectations
- Meeting deadlines
- Time management.

*Planning process:*
- Effectiveness of planning
- Research
- Design process
- Originality.

*Technical Skills:*
- Effectiveness and appropriateness of range of techniques
- Styles
- Tools and kit used.
*Personal skills:*
Communication skills
Team working skills
Time management
Confidence
Organisation
Independent skills.

*Feedback:*
Tutor
Peer
Audience
Industry specialists.

*Portfolio:*
Content
Presentation
Portfolio type
Industry standard
Use of technology.
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Analyse the different types of special FX appropriate for a range of productions and events</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically analyse the influence technology has had on the special FX industry and the impact on employment within the industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse current trends in special FXs and the importance of staying up to date to support employment opportunities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore special FX design ideas using industry standard tools and techniques</td>
<td><strong>LO2 and LO3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore design ideas using tools and techniques appropriate to the specific special FX, as defined by an industry standard brief</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce a diverse portfolio that demonstrates a meticulous and assured approach to the creation of special FXs, from design to application and meets industry standard requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Create design ideas using tools and techniques appropriate to the specific special FX, justifying the decision making process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Create special FXs using industry standard tools, techniques and processes to meet the requirements of an industry standard brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Produce a portfolio of special FX designs using industry standard tools, techniques and processes as defined by a brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate industry standard health and safety processes through creation of special FXs as defined by the brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Produce a portfolio of special FX designs, working to a defined brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Create a portfolio of special FXs that demonstrates the application of industry standard tools, techniques and processes and an analytical approach to the realisation of the brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate the technical and personal skills required to work within the special FX industry based on current trends analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop special FX design ideas that demonstrate assured use of tools, techniques and industry processes whilst meeting the briefs requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Create a portfolio of special FXs that demonstrates the application of industry standard tools, techniques and processes and an analytical approach to the realisation of the brief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the strengths and areas of development of the Special FX portfolio</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the success of your performance as a Special FX artist based on the industry brief requirements</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically analyse the skills required to work as a Special FX artist, in own defined area, and how your portfolio demonstrates your employability skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse the strengths of your Special FX portfolio measuring against industry standards and the requirements of the set brief</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Analyse own areas for skills development and how this is required for future employment in a Special FX field</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks


Websites

http://stage-directions.com  
Stage Directions  
(General reference)

http://www.abtt.org.uk  
The Association of British Theatre Technicians  
Codes, Form and Updates  
(General reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: The Performing Arts Industry
Unit 2: Professional Development
Unit 10: Investigation of Specialism
Unit 21: Production Communication
Unit 22: Stagecraft
Unit 25: Special FX
Unit 28: Hair and Makeup Application
Unit 29: Crewing
Unit 30: Fashion and Fashion Editorial Hair and makeup
Unit 31: Period Hair and Makeup
Unit 32: Creative Research Project
Unit 33: Working in the Performing Arts Industry
Unit 55: Management Role
Unit 66: Hair and Makeup Design
11 Appendices
Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Performing Arts against FHEQ Level 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</th>
<th>Performing Arts HND Programme Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and critical understanding of the well-established principles of their area(s) of study, and of the way in which those principles have developed</td>
<td>KU1 Knowledge and understanding of the principles and practices of a performing arts-based environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU2 A critical understanding of the evolving concepts, theories and models within the study of performing arts across a range of practical and hypothetical scenarios.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU4 An ability to evaluate and analyse a range of concepts, theories and models to make appropriate decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU5 An appreciation of the concepts and principles of CPD, staff development, leadership and reflective practice as methods and strategies for personal and people development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU6 Knowledge and understanding of vital concepts, principles and theories relating to the role of law, policy and professional regulation in the performing arts industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU7 Critical understanding of how performing arts organisations, professionals and services communicate with one another, support processes and lead to collaborative, informed solutions to a problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</td>
<td>Performing Arts HND Programme Outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU9 Critical understanding of the use of industry standard technical documentation and practices.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU11 Deploy appropriate tools, theories, principles and methodologies to analyse, specify, construct, test and evaluate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to apply underlying concepts and principles outside the context in which they were first studied, including, where appropriate, the application of those principles in an employment context</td>
<td>Evidence the ability to show client relationship management and develop appropriate policies and strategies to meet stakeholder expectations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS1 Apply innovative ideas to develop and create new systems or services that respond to the changing nature of performing arts and the performing arts industry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS2 Integrate theory and practice through the investigation and examination of practices in the workplace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS5 Apply performing arts practice concepts and principles to critically evaluate and analyse complex practical problems and provide effective solutions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS2 Recognise and critically evaluate the professional, economic, social, environmental, moral and ethical issues that influence sustainable performing arts practice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of the main methods of enquiry in the subject(s) relevant to the named award, and ability to evaluate critically the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems in the field of study</td>
<td>Critique a range of systems and operations and their application to maximise and successfully meet strategic objectives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS3 An understanding of the appropriate techniques and methodologies used to resolve real-life problems in the workplace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS1 Develop a skill set to enable the evaluation of appropriate actions taken for solving problems in a specific organisational context.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS2 Self-reflection, including self-awareness, the ability to become an effective self-student and appreciate the value of the self-reflection process.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS3 Undertake independent learning to expand on own skills and delivered content.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Typically, holders of the qualification will be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</th>
<th>Performing Arts HND Programme Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a range of established techniques to initiate and undertake critical analysis of information, and to propose solutions to problems arising from that analysis</td>
<td>TS3  Undertake independent learning to expand on own skills and delivered content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS4  Competently use digital literacy to access a broad range of research sources, data and information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS5  Synthesise knowledge and critically evaluate strategies and plans to understand the relationship between theory and real-world scenarios.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effectively communicate information, arguments and analysis in a variety of forms to specialist and non-specialist audiences, and deploy key techniques of the discipline effectively</td>
<td>TS4  Competently use digital literacy to access a broad range of research sources, data and information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS5  Communicate confidently and effectively, both orally and in writing, both internally and externally with individuals, organisations and other stakeholders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS8  Locate, receive and respond to a variety of information sources (e.g. textual, numerical, graphical and computer-based) in defined contexts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS7  Communicate effectively, verbally and in writing and articulate well-defined issues, for a variety of purposes, taking into account the audience viewpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undertake further training, develop existing skills and acquire new competences that will enable them to assume significant responsibility within organisations</td>
<td>TS9  Identify personal and professional goals for continuing professional development in order to enhance competence to work within the performing arts industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS10 Take advantage of available pathways for continuing professional development through higher education.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Holders will also have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</th>
<th>Performing Arts HND Programme Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The qualities and transferable skills necessary for employment requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making</td>
<td><strong>TS11</strong> Develop a range of skills to ensure effective team working, independent initiatives, organisational competence and problem-solving strategies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TS12</strong> Show an ability to work as a member of a team, recognising the different roles within a team and the different ways of organising teams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TS13</strong> Reflect adaptability and flexibility in approach to work, showing resilience under pressure and meeting challenging targets within given deadlines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TS17</strong> Display emotional intelligence and sensitivity to diversity in relation to people and cultures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CS6</strong> Evaluate the changing needs of the performing arts industry and have confidence to self-evaluate and undertake additional CPD as necessary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 2: HNC/HND Performing Arts Programme Outcomes for Students

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Knowledge and Understanding</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Applied skills</th>
<th>Transferable skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17</td>
<td>X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66</td>
<td>X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 3: Glossary of terms used for internally assessed units

This is a summary of the key terms used to define the requirements within units.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Analyse            | Present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination either:  
|                    | ● breaking down a theme, topic or situation in order to interpret and study the interrelationships between the parts and/or  
|                    | ● of information or data to interpret and study key trends and interrelationships.  
|                    | Analysis can be through activity, practice, written or verbal presentation.                                                                |
| Apply              | Put into operation or use.  
|                    | Use relevant skills/knowledge/understanding appropriate to context.                                                                      |
| Arrange            | Organise or make plans.                                                                                                                    |
| Assess             | Offer a reasoned judgement of the standard/quality of a situation or a skill informed by relevant facts.                                   |
| Calculate          | Generate a numerical answer with workings shown.                                                                                           |
| Compare            | Identify the main factors relating to two or more items/situations or aspects of a subject that is extended to explain the similarities, differences, advantages and disadvantages.  
|                    | This is used to show depth of knowledge through selection of characteristics.                                                              |
| Compose            | Create or make up or form.                                                                                                                  |
| Communicate        | Convey ideas or information to others.  
<p>|                    | Create/construct skills to make or do something, for example a display or set of accounts.                                                   |
| Create/Construct   | Skills to make or do something, for example, a display or set of accounts.                                                                    |
| Critically analyse | Separate information into components and identify characteristics with depth to the justification.                                          |
| Critically evaluate| Make a judgement taking into account different factors and using available knowledge/experience/evidence where the judgement is supported in depth. |
| Define             | State the nature, scope or meaning.                                                                                                         |
| Describe           | Give an account, including all the relevant characteristics, qualities and events.                                                           |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discuss</td>
<td>Consider different aspects of a theme or topic, how they interrelate, and the extent to which they are important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate</td>
<td>Show knowledge and understanding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design</td>
<td>Plan and present ideas to show the layout/function/workings/object/system/process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develop</td>
<td>Grow or progress a plan, ideas, skills and understanding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differentiate</td>
<td>Recognise or determine what makes something different.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss</td>
<td>Give an account that addresses a range of ideas and arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate</td>
<td>Work draws on varied information, themes or concepts to consider aspects, such as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● strengths or weaknesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● advantages or disadvantages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● alternative actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● relevance or significance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students’ inquiries should lead to a supported judgement showing relationship to its context. This will often be in a conclusion. Evidence will often be written but could be through presentation or activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain</td>
<td>To give an account of the purposes or reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explore</td>
<td>Skills and/or knowledge involving practical research or testing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify</td>
<td>Indicate the main features or purpose of something by recognising it and/or being able to discern and understand facts or qualities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illustrate</td>
<td>Make clear by using examples or provide diagrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicate</td>
<td>Point out, show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpret</td>
<td>State the meaning, purpose or qualities of something through the use of images, words or other expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigate</td>
<td>Conduct an inquiry or study into something to discover and examine facts and information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justify</td>
<td>Students give reasons or evidence to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● support an opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● prove something is right or reasonable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline</td>
<td>Set out the main points/characteristics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan</td>
<td>Consider, set out and communicate what is to be done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Produce</td>
<td>To bring into existence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstruct</td>
<td>To assemble again/reorganise/form an impression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Adhere to protocols, codes and conventions where findings or judgements are set down in an objective way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>Make a formal assessment of work produced. The assessment allows students to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• appraise existing information or prior events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• reconsider information with the intention of making changes, if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show how</td>
<td>Demonstrate the application of certain methods/theories/concepts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage and manage</td>
<td>Organisation and management skills, for example, running an event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>Express.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggest</td>
<td>Give possible alternatives, produce an idea, put forward, for example, an idea or plan, for consideration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undertake/carry out</td>
<td>Use a range of skills to perform a task, research or activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is a key summary of the types of evidence used for BTEC Higher Nationals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of evidence</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case study</td>
<td>A specific example to which all students must select and apply knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project</td>
<td>A large scale activity requiring self-direction of selection of outcome, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent research</td>
<td>An analysis of substantive research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written task or report</td>
<td>Individual completion of a task in a work-related format, for example, a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulated activity/role play</td>
<td>A multi-faceted activity mimicking realistic work situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team task</td>
<td>Students work together to show skills in defining and structuring activity as a team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>Oral or through demonstration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production of plan</td>
<td>Students produce a plan as an outcome related to a given or limited task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflective journal</td>
<td>Completion of a journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poster/leaflet</td>
<td>Documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 4: Assessment methods and techniques for Higher Nationals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment technique</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Transferable skills development</th>
<th>Formative or Summative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic graphic display</td>
<td>This technique asks students to create documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose. Could be a hard or soft copy.</td>
<td>Creativity, Written communication, Information and communications technology, Literacy</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case study</td>
<td>This technique presents students with a specific example to which they must select and apply knowledge.</td>
<td>Reasoning, Critical thinking, Analysis</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion forum</td>
<td>This technique allows students to express their understanding and perceptions about topics and questions presented in the class or digitally, for example, online groups, blogs.</td>
<td>Oral/written communication, Appreciation of diversity, Critical thinking and reasoning, Argumentation</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent research</td>
<td>This technique is an analysis of research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.</td>
<td>Information and communications technology, Literacy, Analysis</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable skills development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral/Viva</td>
<td>This technique asks students to display their knowledge of the subject via questioning.</td>
<td>Oral communication, Critical thinking, Reasoning</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer review</td>
<td>This technique asks students to provide feedback on each other's performance. This feedback can be collated for development purposes.</td>
<td>Teamwork, Collaboration, Negotiation</td>
<td>Formative Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>This technique asks students to deliver a project orally or through demonstration.</td>
<td>Oral communication, Critical thinking, Reasoning, Creativity</td>
<td>Formative Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production of an artefact/ performance or portfolio</td>
<td>This technique requires students to demonstrate that they have mastered skills and competencies by producing something.</td>
<td>Creativity, Interpretation, Written and oral communication, Interpretation, Decision-making, Initiative, Information and Communications Technology, Literacy, etc.</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable skills development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Project</strong></td>
<td>This technique is a large scale activity requiring self-direction, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.</td>
<td>Written communication, Information literacy, Creativity, Initiative.</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Role playing</strong></td>
<td>This technique is a type of case study, in which there is an explicit situation established, with students playing specific roles, understanding what they would say or do in that situation.</td>
<td>Written and oral communication, Leadership, Information literacy, Creativity, Initiative.</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Self-reflection</strong></td>
<td>This technique asks students to reflect on their performance, for example, to write statements of their personal goals for the course at the beginning of the course, what they have learned at the end of the course and their assessment of their performance and contribution; completion of a reflective journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.</td>
<td>Self-reflection, Written communication, Initiative, Decision-making, Critical thinking</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable skills development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulated activity</td>
<td>This technique is a multi-faceted activity based on realistic work situations.</td>
<td>Self-reflection, Written communication, Initiative, Decision-making, Critical thinking</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team assessment</td>
<td>This technique asks students to work together to show skills in defining and structuring an activity as a team. All team assessment should be distributed equally, each of the group members performing their role, and then the team collates the outcomes, and submits it as a single piece of work.</td>
<td>Collaboration, Teamwork, Leadership, Negotiation, Written and oral communication</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiered knowledge</td>
<td>This technique encourages students to identify their gaps in knowledge. Students record the main points they have captured well and those they did not understand.</td>
<td>Critical thinking, Analysis, Interpretation, Decision-making, Oral and written communication</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable skills development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time constrained assessment</td>
<td>This technique covers all assessment that needs to be done within a centre-specified time constrained period on-site.</td>
<td>Reasoning, Analysis, Written communication, Critical thinking, Interpretation</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top ten</td>
<td>This technique asks students to create a ‘top ten’ list of key concepts presented in the assigned reading list.</td>
<td>Teamwork, Creativity, Analysis, Collaboration</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written task or report</td>
<td>This technique asks students to complete an assignment in a structured written format, for example, a Music business plan, a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.</td>
<td>Reasoning, Analysis, Written communication, Critical thinking, Interpretation</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 5: Transferable skills mapping

### Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Sets</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Intra-personal skills</th>
<th>Interpersonal skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skill</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skill Sets</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Intra-personal skills</td>
<td>Interpersonal skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit</strong></td>
<td><strong>Problem Solving</strong></td>
<td><strong>Critical Thinking/Analysis</strong></td>
<td><strong>Decision Making</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Performing Arts: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Sets</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Intra-personal skills</th>
<th>Interpersonal skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skill Sets</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Intra-personal skills</td>
<td>Interpersonal skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 6: Recognition of Prior Learning

QCF Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Performing Arts unit content mapped to the Level 4 units available in the RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National in Performing Arts.

HNCs in Performing Arts: Unit Mapping Overview

This mapping document is designed to support centres who wish to recognise student achievement in older QCF Higher Nationals within the new RQF suites. The document demonstrates where content is covered in the new suite, and where there is new content to cover to ensure full coverage of learning outcomes.

P – Partial mapping (some topics from the old unit appear in the new unit)

X – Full mapping + new (all the topics from the old unit appear in the new unit, but new unit also contains new topic(s))

N – New unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit no.</th>
<th>Unit title New RQF HN programme</th>
<th>Maps to unit number on existing QCF HN programme</th>
<th>Level of similarity between units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The Performing Arts Industry</td>
<td>19, 30</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Professional Development</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ballet 1</td>
<td>11, 12</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Tap 1</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>American Tap</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Choreography 1</td>
<td>8, 9</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>19, 20, 22, 32, 55</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Dance for Camera</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Singing 1</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Acting 1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit no.</td>
<td>Unit title New RQF HN programme</td>
<td>Maps to unit number on existing QCF HN programme</td>
<td>Level of similarity between units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Musical Theatre in Practice</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>58, 59</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Acting for Camera</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Movement for Actors</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Production Communication</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Stagecraft</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Lighting Operation</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Sound Operation</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Special FX</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Scenic Construction</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Costume Construction</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Hair and Make Up Application</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Crewing</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### HNCs in Performing Arts: Unit Mapping Depth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RQF HNC Units</th>
<th>QCF HNC units</th>
<th>Mapping comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>RQF unit title</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The Performing Arts Industry</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Professional Development</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jazz Dance 1</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ballet 1</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Contemporary Dance 1</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Commercial Dance 1</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Tap 1</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>American Tap</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Choreography 1</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Investigation of Specialism</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Dance for Camera</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Singing 1</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RQF HNC Units</td>
<td>QCF HNC units</td>
<td>Mapping comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>RQF unit title</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Acting 1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Musical Theatre in Practice</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ensemble Singing</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Vocal Repertoire</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Acting for Camera</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Voice and Speech for Actors</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Movement for Actors</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Devising Theatre and Performance</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Production Communication</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RQF HNC Units</td>
<td>QCF HNC units</td>
<td>Mapping comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>RQF unit title</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Stagecraft</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Lighting Operation</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Sound Operation</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Special FX</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Scenic Construction</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Costume Construction</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Crewing</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>